

The Ecclesiology of St Basil the Great:  
A Trinitarian Approach to the Life of the Church

A Thesis Submitted to the University of Manchester  
School of Arts, Languages and Culture  
For the degree of  
Doctor of Philosophy  
In the Faculty of Humanities

2015

Olga Alexandrovna Druzhinina

This research was carried out at  
Nazarene Theological College, Manchester

<b>Abstract</b>	4
<b>Declaration /Copyright Statement</b>	5
<b>Acknowledgements</b>	6
<b>Dedication</b>	7
<b>The Author</b>	8
<b>Abbreviations</b>	9
 <b>Chapter 1</b>	
<b>INTRODUCTION</b>	11
1.1 Thesis Statement	11
1.2 St Basil's theology in recent scholarship	12
1.3 Defining the essential aspects of St Basil's ecclesiology	14
1.4 Thesis Outline.	16
1.5 Historical setting and formative events in St Basil's life	18
1.6 Theological setting	22
 <b>Chapter 2</b>	
<b>TRINITARIAN GOD and the HUMAN COMMUNITY</b>	28
2.1 God's plan for humans: created for life in the community	28
2.2 Divine economy and the life of the Church	38
<i>Economy of the Father in Basil's understanding of the Church</i>	39
<i>Economy of the Son and the life of the Church</i>	41
<i>Economy of the Spirit and the life of the Church</i>	46
Conclusion to chapter 2	54
 <b>Chapter 3</b>	
<b>TRINITARIAN COMMUNION, <i>φιλανθρωπία</i> and the CONCEPT of the CHURCH</b>	56
3.1 Heavenly dimension of the Church	57
3.2 Earthly dimension of the Church	61
Conclusion to chapter 3	71
 <b>Chapter 4</b>	
<b>PERSONS of the TRINITY and the METAPHORS of the CHURCH</b>	73
4.1 God as the Father and the Church as the mother	73
4.2 Metaphors for Christ and the Church	79
4.3 Metaphors for the Spirit and the Church	85
4.4 Trinitarian Persons and other metaphors of the Church	89
<i>Family of God</i>	89
<i>House of God.</i>	93
Conclusion to chapter 4	97
 <b>Chapter 5</b>	
<b>INWARD LIFE of the CHURCH: EDUCATION and TRANSFORMATION through PRAISES and PRAYERS to GOD the TRINITY</b>	98
5.1 Liturgy and Trinitarian teaching	98
5.2 Baptism – entering the Church	107
5.3 Eucharist – maintaining the life of the Church	123

5.4 Penance – restoring to the Church . . . . .	129
Conclusion to chapter 5 . . . . .	137
<b>Chapter 6</b>	
<b>UNITY of the CHURCH and TRINITARIAN CONFESSION . . . . .</b>	<b>139</b>
6.1 Basil's attitude toward a current situation in the Church: the Church and churches . . . . .	139
6.2 Authority in the Church: God and humans . . . . .	148
<i>Responsibilities of God's fellow servants and peace in a local community</i>	152
<i>The brotherly union of bishops in the Church</i> . . . . .	157
Conclusion to chapter 6 . . . . .	164
<b>Chapter 7</b>	
<b>TRINITARIAN PHILANTHROPY as a BASIS for MINISTRY in the CHURCH . . . . .</b>	<b>166</b>
7.1 Humans, great and small, in the eyes of Triune Creator . . . . .	167
7.2 Union with God the Trinity as the ultimate goal of Christians and a ministry of compassion . . . . .	175
7.3 Faith into action: transformation of lives through a theocentric philanthropy . . . . .	181
Conclusion to chapter 7 . . . . .	185
<b>Chapter 8</b>	
<b>MONASTIC COMMUNITIES as PRACTICAL REALISATION of an IDEAL COMMUNITY . . . . .</b>	<b>187</b>
8.1 <i>Koinonia</i> in love . . . . .	187
8.2 The eschatological goal of community – union with the Triune God	190
8.3 Ministry to other people as a testimony of love of God the Trinity .	192
8.4 Life of community and obedience to the leaders appointed by God.	194
Conclusion to chapter 8 . . . . .	196
<b>FINAL CONCLUSIONS . . . . .</b>	<b>198</b>
<b>BIBLIOGRAPHY . . . . .</b>	<b>204</b>

**Final word count = 79,622**

## Abstract

### The Ecclesiology of St Basil the Great: A Trinitarian Approach to the Life of the Church 2015

This thesis analyses St Basil's understanding of the Church with a focus on his Trinitarian approach to its life. Although the role of God the Trinity in the life of the Church occupies a considerable place in St Basil's thought this subject has not been previously addressed by scholars. Based on research of primary texts of St Basil the thesis explores the ideas of the Church that are found in his works, how these ideas shape his ecclesiology, and in what sense there is a Trinitarian approach.

The research shows that St Basil perceives the Church in a consistently Trinitarian fashion where all Persons of the Trinity are involved in the life of the community. Moreover, the eschatological perspective from which St Basil sees the divine and human actions reveals the connections between God's plan at the creation of the world, the existence of the Church and the destiny of humanity, which is Christlikeness and life eternal in the heavenly *Ekklesia* with the Father, Son and Holy Spirit.

The thesis also brings to light St Basil's perception of the Church as a two-dimensional mystical reality with a strong bond between both parts (heavenly and earthly). This view has also not received much scholarly attention to date. The analysis of the life of the Church that is grounded in Trinitarian philanthropy provides further insights into St Basil's understanding of this worldwide fellowship of believers. The thesis shows that the Church is depicted by St Basil as a new social entity where God assembles His children providing for them the proper environment for their growth and development.

The study of Basil's use of metaphors elucidates and enriches the overall picture of the Church that is portrayed in his works as the Mother of believers, the Daughter of the King, the Bride and the Body of Christ. This reveals the relation between the Church and her Trinitarian Creator who is always present with her.

Dealing with the mysteries of the Church, its liturgy and penitential discipline, the thesis discloses the inward life of the Church which is closely connected with Trinitarian confession as "saving confession" in Basil's thought. The same underlying concern for proper Trinitarian teaching is also discussed in relation to the unity of the Church. Special attention is paid to the role of Christian leaders and councils, which should serve as a means of keeping unity and peace inside the local congregations as well as between them.

The thesis also explores how St Basil perceives God's plan for the world and the role of Christians as good servants of the Triune God whose philanthropy they are supposed to reveal through their ministry both to the poor and to the rich. Proceeding with the analysis of the practical achievements, the last chapter demonstrates to what extent St Basil, motivated by his beliefs, was able to apply his ideas about the Church and her relation to God the Trinity in a particular socio-historical context in the life of his monastic communities.

### **Declaration**

No portion of the work referred to in this thesis has been submitted in support of an application for another degree or qualification of this or any other university or other institute of learning.

### **Copyright Statement**

- i. The author of this thesis (including any appendices and/or schedules to this thesis) owns certain copyright or related rights in it (the “Copyright”) and s/he has given The University of Manchester certain rights to use such Copyright, including for administrative purposes.
- ii. Copies of this thesis, either in full or in extracts and whether in hard or electronic copy, may be made only in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 (as amended) and regulations issued under it or, where appropriate, in accordance with licensing agreements which the University has from time to time. This page must form part of any such copies made.
- iii. The ownership of certain Copyright , patents, design, trade marks and other intellectual property (the “Intellectual Property”) and any reproductions of copyright works in the thesis, for example graphs and tables (“Reproductions”), which may be described in this thesis, may not be owned by the author and may be owned by the third parties. Such Intellectual Property and Reproductions cannot and must not be made available for use without the prior written permission of the owner(s) of the relevant Intellectual Property and /or Reproductions.
- iv. Further information on the conditions under which disclosure, publication and commercialisation of this thesis, the Copyright and any Intellectual Property and/or Reproductions described in it may take place is available in the University IP Policy (see <http://www.campus.manchester.ac.uk/medialibrary/policies/intellectual-property.pdf>), in any relevant Thesis restriction declarations deposited in the University Library, The University Library’s regulations (see <http://www.manchester.ac.uk/library/aboutus/regulations>) and in The University’s policy on presentation of Theses.

## **Acknowledgements**

I am grateful to many people without whom this thesis would not have been accomplished.

My deepest appreciation goes to my family and especially to my husband Alexey who is always patient and supportive. He and our daughters Elena and Tatiana became for me a source of inspiration and joy during the time of my studies.

Special thanks must be given to my supervisor Dr David Rainey who assisted and encouraged me during the research and writing of this thesis. I am grateful for his advice, direction, hospitality and very thoughtful conversations.

I am thankful to the community at Nazarene Theological College which always felt like second home. Both faculty and staff have been more than supportive throughout these years: Peter Rea, Joseph Wood, Rachel Varughese, Don Maciver, Rita Stuart, Alison Yarwood. They answered many questions, and sent numerous emails as they walked me through the different stages of this journey.

I am grateful to many people who have helped me with the proofreading of my thesis: Geordan Hammond, Robert Rea, Hazel Maciver, Ruth Copeland-Holtz, Paul Green, Linda Russell, and Sylvia Cortez.

The hospitality of my friends meant a lot to me when I had to spend many days far away from my family. My sincere thanks to Don and Hazel Maciver, Debi and Paul Green, David and Alison Rainey, Kent and Fran Brower, Svetlana and Andrey Khobnya, and many others who took care of me during these stressful times and visits.

Finally, I am thankful to the Church of the Nazarene in Russia and especially to Davide Cantarella for his friendship and his help throughout all my educational endeavours.

## **Dedication**

*To the most important people in my life:  
to my husband Alexey whose love and support made it happen,  
to my daughters Elena and Tatiana,  
and to my granddaughters Sophiya and Veronica.*

### **The Author**

In 1986 I graduated from Volgograd State University with qualifications as a “Mathematician/Programmer” (MA in Science). Later on in my life I became a minister in the Church of the Nazarene and for several years I had been serving as a deacon in Volgograd region, Russia (ordained in 2009). In 2005 I received a BA degree in Religion at European Nazarene College, issued by MidAmerica Nazarene University. Following this in 2006 I completed an MA in Theology with Distinction at Nazarene Theological College, which is affiliated with the University of Manchester. As a partial fulfilment of the university requirements I submitted a dissertation entitled: “*Deification of Community: Life in the Christian Community as the Way of Salvation in 1 John*” under the supervision of Dr K. E. Brower.

Currently, I live in St Petersburg, Russia and work as a part-time faculty member of the European Nazarene College. I also work as a Literature Coordinator for the CIS Field of the Church of the Nazarene, translating text books and commentaries for Russian speaking students.



## Abbreviations

<i>ANF</i>	<i>Ante-Nicene Fathers</i>
<i>CBap</i>	Basil <i>De baptismo</i> ( <i>CBap</i> = <i>Concerning Baptism</i> )
<i>CE</i>	Basil <i>Contra Eunomium</i>
<i>De Jud.</i>	Basil <i>De iudicio Dei</i>
<i>EHB</i>	Basil <i>Homilia exhortatoria ad sanctum baptismum</i> ( <i>EHB</i> = <i>Exhortation to Holy Baptism</i> )
<i>First Clement</i>	<i>The Letter of the Romans to Corinthians Commonly Known as First Clement</i>
<i>HE</i>	<i>Historia ecclesiastica</i>
<i>Hex.</i>	Basil <i>Hexaemeron</i>
<i>Hom.</i>	Basil <i>Homilia(e)</i>
<i>HS</i>	Basil <i>De spiritu sancto</i> ( <i>HS</i> = <i>On the Holy Spirit</i> )
<i>InMJ</i>	Basil <i>In martyrem Julittam</i>
<i>InSQM</i>	Basil <i>In sanctos quadraginta martyres</i>
<i>Letter</i>	Basil <i>Epistula(e)</i>
<i>Life of Macrina</i>	Gregory of Nissa <i>De vita sanctae Macrinae</i> ( <i>Life of Saint Macrina</i> )
<i>LR</i>	Basil <i>Regulae fusius tractatae</i> ( <i>LR</i> = <i>Long Rules</i> )
<i>NPNF</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>Nicene and Post-Nicene Fathers</i> , Series 2
<i>Oration XLIII</i>	Gregory of Nazianzus <i>Oratio XLIII</i>
<i>PG</i>	J. P. Migne (ed.), <i>Patrologia Graeca</i> , Paris, 1857-66
<i>PL</i>	J. P. Migne (ed.), <i>Patrologia Latina</i> , Paris, 1844-64
<i>Prolegomena</i>	B. Jackson <i>Prolegomena: Sketch of the Life and Works of Saint Basil</i>
<i>Ps.</i>	Basil <i>Homiliae in psalmos</i>
<i>Second Clement</i>	<i>An Ancient Christian Sermon Commonly Known as Second Clement</i>
<i>SR</i>	Basil <i>Regulae brevis tractatae</i> ( <i>SH</i> = <i>Short Rules</i> )

### **Short titles of the translations frequently used**

#### **Anderson**

*St. Basil the Great on the Holy Spirit*, tr. Blomfield Jackson, rev. David Anderson. Crestwood, NY: St Vladimir's Seminary Press, 1980.

#### **Clark**

*The Ascetic Works of Saint Basil*, tr., with intro. and notes, William Kemp Lowther Clarke. Translations of Christian Literature series I. Greek Texts, London: SPCN, 1925.

#### **DelCogliano**

*St Basil the Great: On Christian Doctrine and Practice*, tr. Mark DelCogliano. Popular Patristics Series 47. Crestwood: St Vladimir's Seminary Press, 2012.

#### **Schroeder**

*St Basil the Great: On Social Justice*, tr. C. Paul Schroeder. Popular Patristics Series 38. Crestwood: St Vladimir's Seminary Press, 2009.

#### **Wagner**

*Saint Basil, Ascetical Works*, tr. M. Monica Wagner. Fathers of the Church 9. New York: The Catholic University of America Press, 1950.

#### **Way**

*Saint Basil, Exegetic Homilies*, ed. and tr. Agnes Clare Way. Fathers of the Church 46. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. New York: The Catholic University of America Press, 1981.

## INTRODUCTION

St Basil the Great, Bishop of Caesarea, is recognized by many Christian writers as an outstanding organizer and administrator, although he never wrote any specific document on the Church.<sup>1</sup> His writings do not contain discussions on the nature and the structure of the Christian Church, but rather show to varying degrees, Basil's assumptions about the subject. Even his two sets of Rules for monastic communities present only partly his understanding of life in the Christian community. Therefore, to write about the ecclesiology of St Basil is to attempt to draw out from his multitudinous writings something that he only discusses quite allusively or in connection with other matters. This is probably one of the reasons his ecclesiology has not received much scholarly attention to date. Although there are important scholarly studies of St Basil's Trinitarian thought, and researches concerning his ideas of monasticism, as well as excellent biographical studies, there is a significant lack of secondary source material on St Basil's view of the Church. The fact that only one book concerning St Basil's ecclesiology was published in English<sup>2</sup> shows that a fuller and more nuanced research in this area of his thought is necessary.

### Thesis statement

The objective of this study is to produce an account of the teaching of St Basil on the Church, and to consider the relation of his ecclesiology to his understanding of the Triune God, including His plans for humanity and His actions in the history of the world.

St Basil's written material consists of many letters addressed to different types of people, homilies composed to deal with many situations, and treatises that introduce us to

---

<sup>1</sup> As Lukas Vischer states in his book: "Basilius ist nicht durch seine Lehre von der Kirche bedeutsam, sondern durch sein tatsächliches kirchliches Handeln" (Basil is famous not for his Church teaching but for his Church actions). Lukas Vischer, *Basilius der Große: Untersuchungen zu einem Kirchenvater des vierten Jahrhunderts* (Basel: Buchdruckerei Friedrich Reinhardt AG, 1953), 52. Translation is mine.

<sup>2</sup> P. J. Fedwick, *The Church and the Charisma of Leadership in Basil of Caesarea* (Toronto: Pontifical Institute of Mediaeval Studies, 1979).

his point of view on several important spiritual issues. Many of these works are devoted to exploring Trinitarian doctrine and the role of the Holy Spirit in particular. Consequently, traces of thoughts relevant to his understanding of the Church can be found among his works initially written in connection with Trinitarian discussions. Collecting the ideas from St Basil's separate sayings about the Church, the thesis attempts to accomplish two things: (1) to show that St Basil's approach to the Church is indeed Trinitarian, and (2) to explore how he perceives the relation of this special community to the Trinity.

### **St Basil's theology in recent scholarship**

As mentioned above, in recent scholarship rather insufficient attention has been paid to the ecclesiology of St Basil the Great. Published in 1979, the book *The Church and the Charisma of Leadership in Basil of Caesarea* by P. J. Fedwick remains the only book in English which discusses his ecclesiology. Using mostly a Pneumatological approach, the author produces an account of St Basil's understanding of leadership in the Church which he believes is empowered and guided by the Holy Spirit. However, the relationship of the other two Persons of the Trinity to the life of the Church were not treated in detail.

Two more books concerning St Basil's understanding of the Church were published in German.<sup>3</sup> The first book by Lukas Vischer, *Basilius der Große: Untersuchungen zu einem Kirchenvater des vierten Jahrhunderts*, briefly discusses different themes including his views on the unity of the Church (chapters 3-5) which the author presents as constituted by the agreements of the bishops united by the confession of the same faith, the relation of the Church and the state (chapter 7), and St Basil's social work (chapter 8). The second and more recent book, *Spuren der Alten Liebe: Studien zum Kirchenbegriff des Basilius von Caesarea*, which was published in 1991 by Klaus Koschorke, introduces St Basil's vision of the Church as the Body of Christ which is in the process of declining from its

---

<sup>3</sup> Lukas Vischer, *Basilius der Große: Untersuchungen zu einem Kirchenvater des vierten Jahrhunderts* (Basel: Buchdruckerei Friedrich Reinhardt AG, 1953) and Klaus Koschorke, *Spuren der Alten Liebe: Studien zum Kirchenbegriff des Basilius von Caesarea* (Freiburg, Schweiz: Universitätsverlag Freiburg Schweiz, 1991).

previous state of “old love” and peace. Koschorke’s study also covers various aspects of St Basil’s ecclesiology: the life of his monastic communities, the sacraments, the relation of the Church and the state, the unity of the Church, St Basil’s attitude toward the church of Rome, and the role of councils.

What has not yet received sufficient investigation and critique in research<sup>4</sup> is the role of God the Trinity in the life of the Church which occupies a considerable place in St Basil’s thought. The authors of these books provide a great deal of insight into St Basil’s understanding of the present situation in the Church but they do not discuss the eschatological perspective which reflects the involvement of all Persons of God in creation of this special community and in the maintaining of its life while leading all believers to the ultimate goal. Scholars also do not take into account St Basil’s view of the Church as a two-dimensional mystical reality that exists in heaven and on earth at the same time with the strong bond between these two parts.

Although there are outstanding studies that discuss St Basil’s Trinitarian thought they do not consider his ecclesiology.<sup>5</sup> For example, in 1996, Volker Henning Drecoll published in German a chronological study which presents the development of Basil’s Trinitarian theology from his earliest through his latest writings.<sup>6</sup> In 2007 Stephen M. Hildebrand produced a book that became the first English monograph to describe Basil’s

---

<sup>4</sup> There were also a couple of relatively small articles devoted to the ecclesiology of St Basil which discussed similar ideas. The recent one was published in 1969 by B. Krivocheine, “L’ecclésiologie de s. Basile le Grand,” *Messenger de l’exarcat du patriarche russe en Europe occidentale* 17 (1969): 75-102. It is available in Russian: Василий Кривошеин, «Экклесиология Святого Василия Великого», n.p. [cited 23 November 2008]. Online: <http://mystudies.narod.ru/library/k/krivoshein/basil.html>. The previous article was published in 1922: P. Batiffol, “L’ecclésiologie de s. Basile,” *Échos d'Orient* 21 (1922): 9-30.

<sup>5</sup> The development of scholarship on Basil’s Trinitarian thought can be found in Hildebrand who asserts that scholars approached Basil’s teaching on the Trinity from a “predominantly philological and philosophical point of view.” See Stephen M. Hildebrand, *The Trinitarian Theology of Basil of Caesarea: A Synthesis of Greek Thought and Biblical Truth* (Washington, D.C.: The Catholic University of America Press, 2007), 198-206.

<sup>6</sup> Volker Henning Drecoll, *Die Entwicklung der Trinitätslehre des Basilios von Cäsarea* (Göttingen: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht, 1996).

Trinitarian thought.<sup>7</sup> However, no one has yet addressed St Basil's ecclesiology in relation to his Trinitarian theology.

## **Defining the essential aspects of St Basil's ecclesiology**

Ecclesiology is the area of Christian theology which deals with the doctrine of the church. Usually the following aspects are discussed: origins of the church, its biblical images, its relationship with God, its destiny, its role in salvation, its membership, its leadership and governance, hierarchy, its structure, authority,<sup>8</sup> its sacraments and discipline, its ministry, and its role in the world.<sup>9</sup>

Although St Basil does not provide any systematic explanation or definition of the Church these elements of ecclesiology are present in his writings to some extent.<sup>10</sup> Usually, the most important themes from his point of view are discussed explicitly and on several occasions.<sup>11</sup> Therefore, these texts provide a resource for acquiring a proper understanding of St Basil's doctrine of the Church. Accordingly a two-fold methodology will be used. On the one hand, we will follow an outline which reflects the main themes of St Basil's ecclesiology; on the other hand, we will investigate his texts in order to find a relation between his ideas of the Church and his ideas of the Triune God.

Owing to St Basil's way of thinking many aspects of his ecclesiology are interrelated and they should be discussed together. This suggests that the best way to treat the material is thematically rather than to discuss different elements on separate basis. In St Basil's

---

<sup>7</sup> Stephen M. Hildebrand, *The Trinitarian Theology of Basil of Caesarea: A Synthesis of Greek Thought and Biblical Truth*. Among the recent scholarship on the fourth century there can also be mentioned books written by John Behr and Lewis Ayres which devoted several chapter to the discussion of Basil's teaching on the Trinity. See John Behr, *The Nicene Faith* (vol. 2, New York: St Vladimir's Seminary Press, 2004), 263-324 and Lewis Ayres, *Nicaea and its Legacy: An Approach to Fourth Century Trinitarian Theology* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2004), 187-243.

<sup>8</sup> Although St Basil did not say much about the authority, in the fifth chapter of this thesis it is mentioned that for him both "written and unwritten" traditions had equal authority.

<sup>9</sup> See Alister E. McGrath, *Christian Theology* (5<sup>th</sup> ed., Wiley-Blackwell: West Sussex, 2011), 375. See more details in Veli-Matti Kärkkäinen, "Ecclesiology" in *Global Dictionary of Theology* (ed. by William A. Dyrness and Veli-Matti Kärkkäinen, Inter-Varsity Press: Nottingham, 2008), 251-262. See also a list of aspects of ecclesiology in Roger Haight, *Christian Community in History: Ecclesial Existence* (vol. 3, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed., Bloomsbury: London, 2014), viii.

<sup>10</sup> We have to mention that St Basil does not discuss the structure of the Church.

<sup>11</sup> For example, baptism is one of the themes which St Basil discussed in several of his works. Also we can notice that throughout his writing St Basil extensively uses biblical images of the Church.

writings there are at least three significant themes that unite all elements. The first theme, the relationship between the Church and the Triune God as one of the most important aspects of St Basil's ecclesiology will create a framework for our research. The second theme, which influences all other aspects and provides the perspective, is the ultimate destiny of the Church and the eschatological future of humanity. The third one is a theme of love: love of God to humanity, love of humans toward the Triune God and relationships of love among believers. All these three themes form the basis for St Basil's teaching and practice.

There are several other aspects of ecclesiology that take a prominent place in his writings and should be considered in this thesis. The Biblical images of the Church are an obvious part of St Basil's teaching. The Body of Christ, the People of God, the House of God, the Heavenly Kingdom are mentioned a number of times in his letters, homilies and treatises. These and many other images serve as an additional source of information and reveal essential characteristics of the Church.

Sacraments or "mysteries" of the Church occupy a significant place in St Basil's conceptual framework. In his thinking this is related to the role of the Church in salvation and involves the idea that salvation cannot be found outside the Church and without her mysteries. Although St Basil does not discuss the membership of the Church explicitly he provides an answer to a question, "Who constitutes the Church?" This aspect of ecclesiology is treated by St Basil in connection with many other themes: a proper confession of faith, the legitimacy of the mystery of baptism, and an involvement of already departed believers in the life of the Church on earth.

A discussion of the unity of the Church is another leading theme in St Basil's writings which runs through many of his letters and other works. It encompasses several aspects of ecclesiology: involvement of God in the life of the Church, governance of the Church, the

role of bishops and leaders, hierarchy and ministry of bishops as “eyes of the Body,” discipline and obedience of bishops to the conciliar decisions.

Finally, we can observe that St Basil was profoundly concerned with both the Trinitarian teaching of the Church and the ministry of the Church. In this sense his ecclesiology was always informed by and expressed through his practice. Therefore, an account of the ministry of the Church and her role in the world should be included in this thesis. This implies that the life of his monastic communities as a practical application of his teaching should be considered as well.

We have to mention that so called “marks” of the Church (One, Holy, Catholic, Apostolic) which were officially voiced at the Council in Constantinople soon after Basil’s death are not discussed in this thesis separately. However, the traces of thoughts that are connected with these “marks” are present in St Basil’s understanding of the Church and can be found throughout this thesis.<sup>12</sup>

## Thesis Outline

The thesis consists of eight chapters including the introduction and focuses on the analysis of a Trinitarian approach to the life of the Church. It covers a wide range of themes which uncover St Basil’s teaching on the Church and its interrelation with his Trinitarian ideas. Following the introduction the second chapter reveals the connections in St Basil’s thought between God’s plan at the creation of the world, the existence of the Church and the destiny of humanity, which is Christlikeness and life eternal in the heavenly *Ekklesia* with the Father, Son and Holy Spirit. The chapter also focuses on God’s plan for humans which includes the original idea of corporate living and the divine activity

---

<sup>12</sup> The Oneness of the Church is discussed in chapter 4 and chapter 6 of this thesis and it is explicitly shown through St Basil’s use of metaphors. The Catholicity of the Church is mentioned in chapter 6 where the unity of the Church is discussed. The Apostolicity is linked (1) with the teaching of the Church that in Basil’s thinking was received from the apostles and the Fathers and (2) with apostolic succession. Although St Basil does not use this term, he believes that the bishops have “the thrones of the Apostles” (chapter 6, footnote 55). The Holiness of the Church in Basil’s understanding is connected with the presence of the Holy Spirit and it is also discussed through the metaphors related to Christ (for example, “the perfect dove of Christ”).



of all Persons of the Trinity in the establishing of the Church as a special community after the Fall.

Consequently the third chapter elaborates on a more detailed description of St Basil's understanding of the Church as the unique two-dimensional reality, where the Triune God assembles His children because of His love of humanity, providing for them the proper environment for their growth and development. It argues that God's philanthropy serves as a means and as an example for Christians which they are supposed to follow, serving their fellow believers from this special community. Supporting each other, they are encouraged to go together in love through changes and transformation toward Christlikeness and life in the eschatological community which awaits them.

The challenge for the research is to formulate Basil's ecclesiology in a manner that he himself would most likely have done using his large written corpus. By considering St Basil's own way of describing the role and characteristics of the Church, in chapter four this thesis analyses his use of metaphors in order to gain a better understanding of his point of view. First of all, this approach does justice to Basil's mystical thinking. Secondly, it provides us with the material which helps to see, through his imagery and illustrations, the overall picture of the relations of the Trinitarian Persons and the Church.

Chapter five continues to disclose St Basil's concept of the Church and introduces us to the inner life of the Christian community presenting his ideas about liturgy, mysteries and disciplinary methods. It attempts to show the underlying concern for proper Trinitarian teaching and the orthodox theology which is recited during liturgy, and used in the mysteries of the Church.

Chapter six of this thesis demonstrates that Trinitarian confession becomes for St Basil the criterion for deciding who belongs to fellowship of the Church and who can be considered lost because of their rejection of this "saving confession." This chapter highlights Basil's idea that proper Trinitarian theology should become the foundation for

the unity of the Church. It proceeds with the analysis of the role of Christian leaders and councils, which should serve as a means of keeping unity and peace inside the local congregations as well as between them.

Another aspect of Basil's ecclesiology, namely, the Church's ministry, is also examined on the basis of Trinitarian philanthropy and God's plans for humanity. Special attention in chapter seven is paid to the criteria of human worthiness in the eyes of God the Trinity in spite of social differences and ranks in society. This chapter investigates Basil's perception of Creator's dealing with this world, and provides answers to the questions why and how love of Triune God should be visible through acts of Christians in the Church.

Chapter eight draws the thesis to its conclusion by discussing the practical realisation of Basil's understanding of the Church in the life of his monastic communities. It shows to what extent St Basil was able to apply his principles and ideas based on "the law of love," which reflects Trinitarian communion and philanthropy.

## **Historical setting and formative events in St Basil's life**

Theological views of St Basil and his vision of the Church in particular were influenced and conditioned by the significant events and developments of his time. Therefore, it will be helpful to preface the analysis of his writings<sup>13</sup> with a very short biographical sketch in order to introduce the immediate context in which he developed his understanding of the Church.<sup>14</sup>

---

<sup>13</sup> The conclusions in this thesis are based largely on the analysis of primary texts. However, whenever it is possible the opinions of other scholars are taken into consideration.

<sup>14</sup> Obviously, a primary source of information is the writings of St Basil and his friends. The very detailed biography of St Basil can be found in Philipp Rousseau, *Basil of Caesarea* (Berkeley, California, USA: University of California Press, 1994). See also a more recent publication by Andrew Radde-Gallwitz, *Basil of Caesarea: A Guide to His Life and Doctrine* (Eugene, Oregon: Cascade Books, 2012). Several short articles provide the background information which can be very helpful. Frances M. Young, "The Cappadocians", pages 135-172 in *From Nicaea to Chalcedon: a Guide to the Literature and its Background* (2<sup>nd</sup> ed., London: SCM Press, 2010); Andrew Louth, "The Cappadocians", pages 289-295 in *The Cambridge History of Early Christian Literature* (2<sup>nd</sup> ed., Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2006). See Георгий Флоровский, *Восточные Отцы IV века* (Минск, Белоруссия: Жатва, 2006), 68-111. (George Florovsky, *Eastern Fathers of IV century*).

St Basil of Caesarea was born around 330 AD in a rich family of landowners whose holdings were scattered over Cappadocia, Armenia Minor, two provinces of Pontus and perhaps Galatia.<sup>15</sup> He was the first son and the second surviving child in the family with ten children. As the oldest son he had the privilege of spending more time with his father also named Basil, a famous rhetorician at Neo-Caesarea in Pontus, who died prematurely around 345.<sup>16</sup> From his childhood he was introduced to the Church of Christian martyrs because his ancestors were among those heroes of faith who survived the great persecutions. In this Christian family among his relatives and friends Basil first experienced the Church, which was “founded on the blood of Christ and that of many of his followers.”<sup>17</sup> His ideal of the Church and his ideas of Christian life-style were formed or influenced by his family members: by his grandmother St Macrina the Elder,<sup>18</sup> by his faithful Christian father, by his mother Emmelia,<sup>19</sup> the daughter of a martyr, by his older sister St Macrina the Younger,<sup>20</sup> and her model of the ascetic life, and even by his younger brothers, two of whom became bishops (St Gregory of Nyssa and St Peter of Sebaste).

We should mention that his first experience of the Church outside the family had not met his high expectations. When he discovered divisions among the Christians it grieved him deeply. He wrote in his first preface to the *Moralia* that he had seen “a great and exceeding distort on the part of many men both in their relations with one another and their views about the divine Scripture.”<sup>21</sup> This disappointment most likely played a crucial

---

<sup>15</sup> See Thomas A. Kopecek, “The Social Class of the Cappadocian Fathers,” *Church History* 42 (1973): 453-466.

<sup>16</sup> See Fedwick’s Chronology of Basil’s life in *The Church and the Charisma of Leadership in Basil of Caesarea*, 134.

<sup>17</sup> Fedwick, *The Church and the Charisma of Leadership in Basil of Caesarea*, 4.

<sup>18</sup> *Letter CCIV*. 6., as St Basil states in this epistle: “What clearer evidence can there be of my faith, than that I was brought up by my grandmother, blessed woman, who came from you? I mean the celebrated Macrina who taught me the words of the blessed Gregory.” See also *Letter CCXXIII*.2. All quotations are from Basil of Caesarea, *Letters, De Spiritu Sancto and Hexameron*, translated with notes by the Rev Blomfield Jackson, in *NPNF*<sup>2</sup>, except as quoted from different sources.

<sup>19</sup> See Basil’s opinion of his mother in *Letter XXX*.

<sup>20</sup> *Life of Macrina*, PG XLVI: 966CD. See translation by Clarke, *The Life of St Macrina*, 28.

<sup>21</sup> *De Jud.*, Clarke, 77. PG 31:653B.

role in his life and later on made him pursue his ideal of the Church. Until the end of his life he worked to foster unity in the Church.<sup>22</sup>

St Basil received a good classical Greek education. He went to study in Caesarea, continued his studies in Constantinople, and finished his education in Athens. Although this education consisted of Greek literature, philosophy and oratory, it provided a foundation for the later theological discussions. Therefore, this education helped St Basil to develop his oratory skills and to take part in discussions concerning the Trinity. It should not go unnoticed that he was born only five years after the first Council in Nicaea where Christians were able to formulate and voice their theological statements. St Basil belonged to a generation that was “at hand with the spiritual capacity for a further development of theology, a development which was needed if a clear and self-consistent solution was to be found to the problem of the Trinity, after all the confusion of the past.”<sup>23</sup> In this sense, his education played its role in his preparation for the ministry which influenced the life of the Church in the fourth century.<sup>24</sup>

St Basil returned home in 355 and began his career as a rhetorician. He taught for a year but a sudden “spiritual awakening”<sup>25</sup> occurred in his life<sup>26</sup> after which St Basil gave up his position as rhetor in Caesarea and totally committed himself to Christian asceticism. This “spiritual awakening” made him search for a spiritual guide in his life. With this aim in mind, St Basil journeyed through Egypt, Palestine, Syria and Mesopotamia visiting the famous ascetics. Their distinct way of Christian life and Christian practices influenced

---

<sup>22</sup> See similar notion in Behr, *The Nicene Faith*, 106.

<sup>23</sup> Hans Lietzmann, *The Era of the Church Fathers* (A History of the Early Church, vol. IV, 5<sup>th</sup> ed., London: Lutherworthpress, 1960), 21.

<sup>24</sup> During his studies he met his friend St Gregory of Nazianzus whose friendship also exercised a significant influence in the life of St Basil.

Very often Basil’s theology was studied by scholars as part of ‘Cappadocian’ thought. In order to emphasize Basil’s originality in this thesis the references to other Cappadocians are reduced to a minimum because their particular understanding of the Church has not yet been thoroughly studied. Therefore, it seems too early to draw a comparison between these famous theologians.

<sup>25</sup> Basil wrote about this experience in his *Letter CCXXIII.2*. More details in Johannes Quasten, *Patrology* (2<sup>nd</sup> ed., Utrecht: Spectrum Publishers, 1975), 204.

<sup>26</sup> Gregory of Nyssa insists that their sister Macrina “took him in hand” and converted him to the ascetic life. See *Life of Macrina*. PG XLVI: 966BC. Clarke also suggests that the tragic death of Basil’s brother Naucratus is connected to this conversion. See Clarke, *St Basil the Great: a Study in Monasticism*, (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1913), 23.

Basil's understanding of Christianity and the role of the Church in the lives of believers.<sup>27</sup> Early Christian monasticism was a popular movement which allowed monks to assume a special spiritual role, particularly in the East. Some monastic groups set up their own organizations parallel to the existing ecclesial community. This inevitably raised questions of Christian institutional structure and Church unity itself.<sup>28</sup> According to Meyendorff, "No one better than St Basil of Caesarea understood the challenge of monasticism to the Church as a whole and attempted to understand the phenomenon in the framework of Christian theology and ecclesiology."<sup>29</sup>

After his monastic journey St Basil returned home, sold his property and distributed the proceeds among the poor. Under the influence of his sister Macrina he settled at Annesi in Pontus where he devoted himself to the life of asceticism. Basil lived with his family members on the family property.<sup>30</sup> His desire to keep simplicity in every aspect of his life and his perception of the primitive Church, described in Acts, was reflected in his teaching about the Christian communities. During this time Basil started to write his *Moralia*<sup>31</sup> – a manual for the Christians who were seeking spiritual perfection. These rules with the accompanying biblical proof texts show his ecclesiological ideas related to duties and practices of believers that he believed should be integrated into the life of the Church.

In 359 Basil attended the Council of Seleucia and after that time he became more actively involved in the life of the Church. After his ordination as presbyter by Eusebius he stayed for a while in Pontus<sup>32</sup> but in 365 Basil came back to the church in Caesarea. According to St Basil, it was a critical period in the life of the Church in the East and the

---

<sup>27</sup> As Basil shared this experience, he stated "whomsoever I found walking in the rule of godliness delivered, those I set down as fathers, and made them my soul's guides in my journey to God." See *Letter CCIV* 6.

<sup>28</sup> See John Meyendorff, *The Byzantine Legacy in the Orthodox Church* (St Vladimir's Seminary Press, 2000), 197-198.

<sup>29</sup> John Meyendorff, *The Byzantine Legacy in the Orthodox Church*, 198.

<sup>30</sup> Here his friend Gregory of Nazianzus visited him several times and took part in a composition of an anthology of texts which were drawn from Origen's work and called the *Philocalia*.

<sup>31</sup> Some scholars suggest that only the first draft of *Moralia* was composed at that time. See Fedwick, *The Church*, 139.

<sup>32</sup> There was an apparent misunderstanding between Eusebius and Basil at that time. See *Oration XLIII*. 28. See details in Fedwick, *The Church*, 140.

crisis was not only external but also internal, as Christians became involved in a domestic war against Christians.<sup>33</sup> From now on and especially after Eusebius' death when Basil was elected as his successor, he worked hard in order to defend orthodoxy and bring unity in the Church.

As Bishop of Caesarea, St Basil also devoted himself to social and charitable work and was able to apply his theological ideas and principles about the ministry of the Church in practice. He built the "new city" of the "Basilieas" with a hospital for the sick, a hospice for the elderly, and with places for workers. For these social actions and achievements Adalbert Hamman calls St Basil "one of the first social apostles raised by the church."<sup>34</sup> St Basil died on 1 January, 379,<sup>35</sup> after nine years of his episcopate where he served with all his strength as pastor, statesman, theologian and defender of the faith. This service and all his achievements made him a Church Father and famous leader of the Church.

## Theological setting

The doctrine of the Church in its full theological sense was not yet developed at the time of St Basil.<sup>36</sup> Those who wrote on this issue before him had not formulated their understanding of the Church in precise terms. The writings of the Apostolic Fathers mostly consist of responses to internal and external pressures and conflicts connected with Jewish and pagan influence. These were attempts to explain the essential characteristics or defining marks of the Christian life.<sup>37</sup> The only work on the Church before the fourth

---

<sup>33</sup> *Letter CCLVIII*. See also Anthony Meredith, *The Cappadocians* (Crestwood: St Vladimir's Seminary Press, 1995), 23.

<sup>34</sup> Adalbert Hamman, *How to Read the Church Fathers* (2<sup>nd</sup> ed., London: SCM Press, 1993), 79.

<sup>35</sup> There are suggestions among scholars that Basil may have died as early as September 377. This debate is examined in more detail in Appendix III of Philip Rousseau, *Basil of Caesarea*, 360-363.

<sup>36</sup> See Colin E. Gunton, *The Promise of Trinitarian Theology* (Edinburgh: T&T Clark, 1991), 60. See also a very helpful summary about the development of ecclesiology in chapter VIII and chapter XV in J. N. D. Kelly, *Early Christian Doctrines* (5<sup>th</sup> ed., London: Adams & Charles Black, 1977), 189-220, 401-408. He mentioned that "Eastern teaching about the Church remained immature, not to say archaic, in the post-Nicene period." Kelly, *Early Christian Doctrines*, 401.

<sup>37</sup> James Carleton Paget, "The Vision of the Church in the Apostolic Fathers" in *A Vision For the Church* (Edinburg: T&T Clark, 1997), 194.

century – *On the Unity of the Church*<sup>38</sup> – was written by Cyprian bishop of Carthage but even this book was a response to schisms in the church.<sup>39</sup>

The years of St Basil's life were the years of theological controversy and divisions in the Church and, consequently, ecclesiology was not a dominant theme at that time.<sup>40</sup> The Arian crisis made the Church articulate Trinitarian ideas with greater clarity: the existence of the Three in one Godhead and the equality of the Son and the Spirit were crucial. Consequently, at that period, theologians were not interested in creating a doctrine of the Church in a strict sense. St Basil of Caesarea was not an exception. Therefore, the question of Church existence and organization was often mentioned in his writings in connection to Trinitarian teaching.

Although there is no evidence that St Basil was directly influenced by earlier theologians it is necessary to mention that he was not the first one in whose writings we can find a notion of a Trinitarian approach to ecclesial life. In the early Christian texts there is “an emerging consciousness that the God who is Three is the origin of the Church and source of its unity.”<sup>41</sup>

Several examples can be given concerning this issue. Clement of Rome in his letter to the Corinthian church called on the believers to live in peace based on the life of the Trinity. He explains: “For as God lives, and as the Lord Jesus Christ lives and the Holy Spirit (on whom the elect believe and hope), the man who with humility and eager considerateness and with no regrets does what God has decreed and ordered will be

---

<sup>38</sup> Cyprian, *On the Unity of the Church*, tr. Ernest Wallis in *ANF* (vol. 5, repr. Grand Rapids: Eerdmans Publishing Company), 1971.

<sup>39</sup> According to Torrance, “There was indeed no significant monograph on the subject between Cyprian's *De Unitate* and Wycliffe's *De Ecclesia*.” See T. F. Torrance, *Theology in Reconstruction* (London: SCM Press LTD, 1965), 266.

<sup>40</sup> Kevin Giles asserts that during the fourth century theologians were engaged in debates about the person of Christ and the Trinity and “no attention was given to the doctrine of the church”. See Kevin Giles, *What on Earth is the Church?* (London: SPCK, 1995), 214. See also *Letter CLXIV*.

<sup>41</sup> Anne Hunt, “The Trinity and the Church: Explorations in Ecclesiology from a Trinitarian Perspective,” *Irish Theological Quarterly* 70 (2005): 217.

enlisted and enrolled in the ranks of those who are saved through Jesus Christ.”<sup>42</sup>

There were similar Trinitarian ideas connected with the ethical norms of the Church in the writings of Ignatius of Antioch.<sup>43</sup> Also Cyprian, bishop of Carthage, in his treatise *On the Lord's Prayer* described the Church using the Trinitarian formula. He believed that the Church is “the people united in one in the unity of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.”<sup>44</sup> Tertullian wrote as well about the connections between the Church and the divine three: “For the very Church itself is, properly and principally, the Spirit Himself, in whom is the Trinity of the One Divinity – Father, Son and Holy Spirit. (The Spirit) combines that Church which the Lord has made to consist in ‘three’.”<sup>45</sup>

However, St Basil was a theologian who not only shared a similar notion of the role of the Trinity in the life of the Church but elaborated a new theological language and a new terminology: he came to a relational understanding of Godhead and tried to explain in more detail the relation of each Person of the Trinity to the Church.<sup>46</sup>

St Basil's approach to God which underlines his whole theology and the doctrine of the Church, in particular,<sup>47</sup> is the apophatic approach. It is often called negative theology because it rejects that the human mind can reach the very essence of God. St Basil is known as one who together with Gregory of Nazianzus and Gregory of Nyssa, developed this way of thinking and affirmed “the absolute transcendence of God and excluded any possibility of identifying Him with any human concept.”<sup>48</sup>

---

<sup>42</sup> *First Clement* 58 in *Early Christian Fathers* (The Library of Christian Classics 1, ed. C. C. Richardson, New York: Collier Books, 1970), 70.

<sup>43</sup> Ignatius of Antioch, *To the Ephesians* 9.1 in *Early Christian Fathers*, 90. See also Ignatius of Antioch, *To the Magnesians* 13.1 in *Early Christian Fathers*, 97.

<sup>44</sup> Cyprian, *On the Lord's Prayer* IV.23 in *ANF*, vol. V, 454.

<sup>45</sup> Tertullian, *On the Modesty* 21 in *ANF*, vol. IV, 99-100.

<sup>46</sup> See Chapter 4 of this thesis. St Basil used metaphors to explain the relationship between God the Trinity and the Church.

<sup>47</sup> The apophatic approach to the Church will be mentioned in Chapter 3 of this thesis.

<sup>48</sup> Meyendorff, *Byzantine Theology*, 11. Later on this idea that God's essence is incomprehensible became “the major axiom for Eastern Christian thought.” See Olson, Roger E., *The Story of Christian Theology* (Leicester: APPOLOS, 1999), 181. This approach was later developed by other theologians and became “the fundamental characteristic of the whole theological tradition of the Eastern Church.” See Vladimir Lossky, *The Mystical Theology of the Eastern Church* (London: James Clarke & Co. LTD, 1957), 26.



This theological approach primarily developed out of discussions about God's essence and the Sonship of Christ raised by heretics. In his answer to the different heretical statements St Basil provided necessarily limited language about God when he sought to express the incomprehensibility of the mystery of the Trinity and its ineffable essence. Trying to explain the unity of God and the harmony of inner relationships with the threeness of Persons, St Basil said that he used "terms not found in Scripture, yet all the same not alien from the godly sense of Scripture."<sup>49</sup>

The great contribution made by St Basil to the doctrine of Trinity was his ability to redefine the words '*hypostasis*' and '*ousia*' in order to provide the correct language necessary to describe the distinct nature of the Father, Son and Holy Spirit.<sup>50</sup> As Boris Bobrinskoy put it, "St Basil was the first to clear the term *hypostasis* of its ambiguities."<sup>51</sup>

The first time Persons of the Trinity were described by the word *hypostasis* in Origen.<sup>52</sup> However, the words, *ousia* and *hypostasis*, were used as synonyms with one meaning 'being.' Later on St Basil uses *hypostasis* in his writings to emphasize the distinction between the Persons. At the same time Basil builds on Athanasius' ideas and underlines the unity of God through the term *ousia*. As writings of Athanasius show, these terms meant for him exactly the same thing.<sup>53</sup> Defending divinity of the Son and

---

<sup>49</sup> He was talking about *ousia* and *hypostasis*. See *De Fide*, Clarke, 91.

<sup>50</sup> We have to mention that the whole formula *one ousia, three hypostaseis* does not appear in Basil's works. See the history of the formula in Joseph T. Lienhard, "*Ousia and Hypostasis: The Cappadocian Settlement and the Theology of 'One Hypostasis,'*" in *The Trinity* (ed. Stephen T. Davis, Daniel Kendall Sj, and Gerald O'Collina Sj; Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1999), 99-121. See also S. M. Hildebrand, *The Trinitarian Theology of Basil of Caesarea: A Synthesis of Greek Thought and Biblical Truth*, 58.

<sup>51</sup> Boris Bobrinskoy, *The Mystery of the Trinity* (Crestwood: St Vladimir's Seminary Press, 1999), 234. The Latin equivalent of the Greek term *hypostasis* was *substantia* and these words correspond to some degree etymologically (*hypo-stasis* – *substantia*). But the meaning of the content was different with the translation into Latin: "If Eastern theology spoke of two hypostases, in Latin that amounted to a difference in substance between Father and Son." See Franz Dunzl, *A Brief History of the Doctrine of the Trinity in the Early Church*, 72. See also a very good summary about the meaning and use of the word *hypostasis* by classical Greek writers in Christopher Stead, *Philosophy in Christian Antiquity* (3<sup>rd</sup> ed., Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1996), 174-177.

<sup>52</sup> See G.L. Prestige, *God in Patristic Thought* (3<sup>rd</sup> ed. London: SPCK, 1969), 179.

<sup>53</sup> See Zizioulas, *Being as Communion*, 87. He refers to Athanasius words in PG 26:1036.

substantial unity in the Holy Trinity<sup>54</sup> Athanasius did not explain clearly “the otherness” within the very substance of God. It was only implied by him through the argument that the Son has always belonged to God’s *ousia*.<sup>55</sup> Developing the meaning of the terms which were used by earlier theologians, such as Origen and Athanasius, St Basil was able to increase the capacity of the language and to show different shades of meaning, which enabled these words to perform different functions.

St Basil also differs from Athanasius in speaking of the Father as the origin of the Son and the Spirit. As Noble explains, “The significant point of the doctrine of the Trinity held by Cappadocians was that they did not see the *ousia* or “being” of God as the guarantee of unity, as if the *ousia* were some fourth entity ontologically superior to the three Persons (*hypostases*). ... for Cappadocians, the guarantee of the Trinity was the Father, who was the *arche*, the “origin” or “source,” of the Son and the Spirit.”<sup>56</sup> The theme of the Father as the source of the Son’s existence was used “as a prophylactic against charges that pro-Nicenes teach a plurality of Gods or that the Godhead is divided.”<sup>57</sup> Therefore, the Monarchy of the Father was pointing to communion within the Trinity. St Basil’s achievement of the “desynonymising” of *ousia* and *hypostasis* made possible the distinction between the Persons.<sup>58</sup> At the same time the idea of Monarchy of the Father allowed holding together the unity and plurality of God. St Basil’s model of Godhead presented a view of the divine being as a being which is a communion of persons (*koinonia*).<sup>59</sup> For Basil “one *ousia*, three *hypostaseis*”<sup>60</sup> meant that there were relations

---

<sup>54</sup> See details in Atanasij Jevtich, “Between the ‘Niceans’ and the ‘Easterners’: ‘Catholic’ confession of Saint Basil,” *St Vladimir’s Theological Quarterly* 24 (1980), 242.

<sup>55</sup> See this idea in Zizioulas, *Being as Communion*, 86-87.

<sup>56</sup> Thomas A. Noble, *Holy Trinity: Holy People. The Theology of Christian Perfecting* (DLS; Cascade Books: Eugene, Oregon, 2013), 214.

<sup>57</sup> Ayres, *Nicaea and its Legacy*, 206.

<sup>58</sup> Gunton, *The Promise of Trinitarian Theology*, 9.

<sup>59</sup> Paul M. Collins, *Trinitarian Theology West and East: Karl Barth, the Cappadocian Fathers, and John Zizioulas* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2001), 151.

<sup>60</sup> We have to mention that the whole formula *one ousia, three hypostaseis* does not appear in Basil’s works. See the history of the formula in Joseph T. Lienhard, “*Ousia* and *Hypostasis*: The Cappadocian Settlement and the Theology of ‘One Hypostasis,’” in *The Trinity* (ed. Stephen T. Davis, Daniel Kendall Sj, and Gerald O’Collina Sj; Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1999), 99-121. See also S. M. Hildebrand, *The Trinitarian Theology of Basil of Caesarea*, 58.

within one Godhead and the Persons of God were inseparable and indivisible and yet not identical in every way.<sup>61</sup> St Basil was able to reconsider the word *hypostasis*<sup>62</sup> and create the relational approach to God.

Contrary to the philosophical suggestions that God was an unchanging being, eternal, and completely outside space and time,<sup>63</sup> St Basil's concept of God as an inseparable communion of Persons was related to creation and to the Church in particular. The Trinitarian disputes and debates, which occupied the minds of many people of that time including St Basil and his friends, influenced the development of St Basil's ecclesiology. Consequently, his views of the Church became intrinsically woven with his understanding of the Trinitarian God and His actions in this world.

---

<sup>61</sup> Olson, *The Story of Christian Theology*, 185.

<sup>62</sup> In the beginning St Basil was also using the word *prosopon* (with the meaning "person") in Trinitarian disputes but later he dismissed this term. A very detailed analysis of both terms and their use in Basil's writings can be found in Lucian Turcescu, "Prosōpon and Hypostasis in Basil of Caesarea's "Against Eunomius" and the Epistles," *Vigiliae Christianae* 51:4 (1997): 374-395. See also Hildebrand, *The Trinitarian Theology of Basil of Caesarea*, 76-101.

<sup>63</sup> See Stead, *Philosophy in Christian Antiquity*, 58.

## Chapter 2

### TRINITARIAN GOD AND THE HUMAN COMMUNITY

For acquiring a proper understanding of St Basil's ecclesiology, a good point to start is his view on the beginning of the human race and the very foundation of the world which was created through the initiative of God the Trinity. This will show us the perspective from which St Basil sees the Church, her relation to God and to His plan for humanity which includes perfection in godliness and the eschatological future.<sup>1</sup>

In St Basil's thought, God exists in divine fellowship or *koinonia*, but He has a relationship with the outside world which is His creation. The Church, as a human community, belongs to this world. Consequently, we will consider the economy of all Persons of the Trinity in relation to the life of the Church as a part of His created order.

#### God's plan for humans: created for life in community

St Basil's understanding of creation has to do with dogma and with the practical application to the lives of believers.<sup>2</sup> It is about life in a community as God has prepared for us. In his *Hexaemeron*, which are homilies about the creation of the world, Basil shows this as the intent of God's work: human persons are created not to be solitary but to live and to grow together in love.

...the Lord calls Himself a vine and His Father the husbandman, and every one of us who are grafted by faith into the Church the branches.... He wishes that the clasplings of love, like the tendrils of the vine, should attach us to our neighbours and make us rest on them, so that, in our continual aspirations towards heaven, we may imitate these vines, which raise themselves to the tops of the tallest trees.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Mario Baghos states in his article that St Basil in his writings "puts forward a holistic eschatological vision whereby the glorious transfiguration of the world at the end of time was already precipitated on the very first day of the creation." The proper domain of this existential dimension of the eschatological state is "the life of the Church." See Mario Baghos, "St Basil's Eschatological vision: Aspects of the Recapitulation of History and the "Eighth Day"," *Phronema* 25 (2010): 85.

<sup>2</sup> See Георгий Флоровский, *Восточные Отцы IV века*, 8. The question of creation was a very important one in Basil's theology. In order to prevent heretical teaching about creation being introduced into the Church St Basil explained his understanding of creation in his homilies *Hexaemeron*.

<sup>3</sup> *Hex. V.6.*

Throughout his works St Basil shows and defends the Trinitarian way of creation.<sup>4</sup> He teaches that the whole Trinity was involved into this process. St Basil perceives God the Father as “the original cause of all things that are made.”<sup>5</sup> He also asserts that “the Holy Spirit took an active part in the creation of the world”<sup>6</sup> and that through Christ everything was created: “You are therefore to perceive three, the Lord who gives the order, the Word who creates, and the Spirit who confirms.”<sup>7</sup>

According to St Basil, this created world “drew its origin from God”<sup>8</sup> who is “beneficent Nature, Goodness without measure.”<sup>9</sup> Consequently, creation itself is good. “Being good, He made it an useful work,” Basil says, “Being wise, He made it everything that was most beautiful. Being powerful He made it very great.”<sup>10</sup> Although St Basil keeps the idea of otherness and radical difference between God and the world, he believes that God is involved in it and cares for his creation: “God has foreseen all, He has neglected nothing. His eye, which never sleeps, watches over all. He is present everywhere and gives to each being the means of preservation.”<sup>11</sup>

God created the world according to His will<sup>12</sup> and to His plan. He created it out of nothing. Everything that came into existence was created by God and did not have any pre-existent form. St Basil concludes that nothing has the same honours as God who is “the Creator and the Demiurge of the world.”<sup>13</sup> Only His wisdom and power linked all the diverse parts of the universe with “indissoluble attachment and established between them

---

<sup>4</sup> St Basil wanted to prove to heretics of his time that the Holy Spirit was actively involved in creation. He argued that it was the Spirit of God who “prepared the nature of water to produce living beings” and it is the same Spirit “which completes the divine and blessed Trinity.” See *Hex. II.5*.

<sup>5</sup> *HS XVI.38*.

<sup>6</sup> *Hex. II.5*.

<sup>7</sup> *HS XVI.38*.

<sup>8</sup> *Hex. I.1*.

<sup>9</sup> *Hex. I.2*.

<sup>10</sup> *Hex. I.7*. In the next chapters of *Hexaemeron* Basil argued that evil did not have its origin in God. He considered “rightly so called” evil as “the condition of the soul opposed to virtue, developed in the careless on account of their falling away from good.” See *Hex. II.4f-5*. See also *Hom.9* in PG 31:329A-353A

<sup>11</sup> *Hex. VII.5*.

<sup>12</sup> *Hex. I.6f*.

<sup>13</sup> *Hex. II.2*. On the significance of the idea of creation “out of nothing” (*ex nihilo*) in the Eastern Church see John D. Zizioulas, *Lectures in Christian Dogmatics* (London: T&T Clark, 2008), 88-98.

so perfect a fellowship and harmony that the most distant, in spite of their distance, appeared united in one universal sympathy.”<sup>14</sup>

Following Basil’s flow of thought, this “perfect fellowship” and “harmony” must include the creation of humans. Unfortunately, St Basil finished his account of creation in the nine discourses of *Hexaemeron* without discussing in detail the creation of humans. He only briefly mentions man’s creation in the last paragraph of the ninth homily, expounding the verse from Genesis 1:26.<sup>15</sup> However, the creation of the first man and woman is discussed in his *Homily on Psalm 1*. St Basil’s exegesis of the text of this Psalm implies that they were created as the first human community whose members were equal in honour: “[There was] one gracious act of God for man and woman when there was one creation of equal dignity for both of them...”<sup>16</sup> and each of them is “a part of a whole (τὸ ὅλον).”<sup>17</sup> In this sense the man from the text is not just one particular person but the representative of the family or community which is righteous before God. St Basil communicates the idea that woman is included in the community as well. Although he writes in this passage that man is “a principal part of a whole which was manifested”<sup>18</sup> he does not mean a major subordination. On contrary, he posits that husband and wife had the same nature (φύσιν μία) and that their actions or operations (ἐνέργειαι) are the same.<sup>19</sup> Probably, the only reason for man to be a leading part is the sequence of creation: a man

---

<sup>14</sup> *Hex. II.2*. One more time in this homily St Basil confirms the idea that before the world was created matter did not exist: “But God, before all those things which now attract our notice existed... created matter in harmony with the form which He wished to give it.”

<sup>15</sup> In this ninth homily St Basil promised to return to the subject but it seems that he was not able to fulfil his promise. There are two homilies which are published among the Basil’s works, *De hominis structura*, *Oratio I* and *II*, but their authenticity was rejected by many scholars. See a good explanation in Orphanos, *Salvation and Creation* (Athens, 1975), 70-71. He declares that the reasons for the rejection are serious ones: “a) These homilies are not mentioned by ancient authors such as Jerome, Cassiodorus, who knew only nine homilies on the *Hexaemeron*. b) The same homilies, in a slightly different form, are to be found among the works of Gregory of Nyssa, and c) From the point of view of style and content, there is a considerable difference between them and the authentic works of Basil.”

<sup>16</sup> *Ps. I*, PG 29:216D. The original Greek text reads: Μία γὰρ ἀρετὴ ἀνδρὸς καὶ γυναικὸς, ἐπειδὴ καὶ ἡ κτίσις ἀμφοτέροις ὁμότιμος. Translation is mine.

<sup>17</sup> *Ps. I*, PG 29:217A. A similar idea can be found in the *Homily on the Martyr Julitta*, “I am from the same lump as men. We have been made according to the image of God, as they also are. By creation, the female, with the same honour as the male, has become capable of virtue.” PG 31:240D-241A.

<sup>18</sup> *Ps. I*, PG 29:217A. The Greek reads: ἐν τοῦ ἡγεμονικωτέρου τὸ ὅλον ἐνδείξασθαι.

<sup>19</sup> *Ps. I*, PG 29:217A.

was created first and a woman was created after him. Hence, in the beginning of the world God created not a solitary person but the community where persons were equal.

Interestingly enough, this relationship between a man and a woman in the first human community reminds us of St Basil's thought on the relationships inside the Trinitarian community: Monarchy of the Father with the equality of Persons.<sup>20</sup>

This man and woman were distinguished from the animals and from the rest of creation because, Basil concludes, God "deemed *them* worthy of knowledge of Himself, equipped *them* with reason beyond all other creatures, allowed *them* to luxuriate in the inconceivable beauties of Paradise, made *them* rulers of all earthly things."<sup>21</sup> They had a privilege and an ability to know God and they were created in the image of their Creator.<sup>22</sup> Although St Basil does not explain what the image of God meant, throughout his writings we can find several phrases which imply that as humans we are created for a fellowship with our God and with each other.<sup>23</sup>

One of the divine attributes which reflects the image of God in human beings is the main faculty of the soul – a human mind (*νοῦν*) or intellect (*λόγος*)<sup>24</sup> that can acquire knowledge of God.<sup>25</sup> According to St Basil, people without reason do not have "the distinguishing mark" (*ἐξαίρετος*) of a human. This special mark includes "the

---

<sup>20</sup> In St Basil's Trinitarian theology the unity of the Triune God is attributed not so much to the common substance shared by the Godhead as to the person of the Father. This idea of unity is grounded in the concept of the Father's "Monarchy." See *HS XVIII.47*. The three divine hypostases are equal in divinity but the Father is not "caused" by any other person. See *HS V.9*, and *HS XVI.37*.

<sup>21</sup> In the original text it is singular *he* and *him* instead of plural *them* but St Basil speaks of *ανθρωπος* which in this context means humanity and not the individual man. See *LR*, Clarke, 156. PG 31:913B.

<sup>22</sup> *Ps. I*, PG 29, 217A. See also *Ps. XLVIII*, PG 29:437D. The Greek reads: *κατ' εἰκόνα του κτίσαντος αὐτὴν ἐγένετος*, and *LR*, PG 31:913B. See also *Hom. 4*, PG 31: 222CD. See also *Hom. 3*, Wagner, 441.

<sup>23</sup> See, for example, homily on *Ps. XIV 1.6*, PG 29:261D; *Hom. 3*, PG 31:197D; *Letter XCVII*, PG 32:493; *LR*, PG 31:917A.

<sup>24</sup> *Letter CCXXXIII.1*. For the purpose of this study we will discuss in detail only one of the divine attributes, "reason," which reflects the image of God in man. But we have to mention that the image of God in man includes the reflection of some other divine attributes, such as: "immortality, freedom, will, love, perfection and holiness" which are common to the three persons of the Holy Trinity. See Maximos Aghiorgoussis, "Application of the theme 'eikon theou' (image of God) according to Saint Basil the Great," *Greek Orthodox Theological Review* 21.3 (1976), 270.

<sup>25</sup> *Ps. XLVIII*, PG 29:433B, The Greek reads: *ἴδιον γὰρ του ἀνθρώπου τὸ λογικόν*. See also *Hom. 4*, PG 31: 222CD.

understanding of God the Father, and the reception of the Word which from the beginning existed with God, and the enlightenment (or illumination, *φωτισμός*) that is given through the Spirit.”<sup>26</sup> All these actions characterize humanity’s ability to have a relationship with God the Trinity. From the beginning, Basil says, there was an opportunity for humans to have “close communion” (*οἰκείωσις*) with God that could lead to “the imitation of Christ” and to perfection of life.<sup>27</sup> Now this perfection is supposed to happen in the community of believers after “a cleansing of the soul from the filth that has grown on it from the carnal mind (*τὸ σαρκικὸν φρόνημα*).”<sup>28</sup>

This human faculty, intellect (*λογος*) or mind (*νους*), was created in man not only to communicate with God but with other people as well. For this reason God gave them a special skill that allowed people to use words and to share the deep “thoughts of their hearts.”<sup>29</sup> St Basil believes that there is an innate inclination in human beings to have fellowship with each other. Their nature is created in such a way that they are supposed to live in society and to love their neighbours.<sup>30</sup> This kind of fellowship suggests “the spirit of sharing, mutual love and what is proper to their nature.”<sup>31</sup> God blesses people with a nature that makes them live together and depend on one another. People possess “the power to love” that was “implanted” in them in the moment they were created.<sup>32</sup> In this sense there is “the necessity of fellowship” in “our bodily constitution.”<sup>33</sup> As St Basil puts it,

Who does not know that man is a tame and sociable (*κοινωνικόν*) animal, and not a solitary and fierce one? For nothing is so characteristic of our nature as to associate with one another, to need one another, and to love our kind. So the Lord Himself first

---

<sup>26</sup> *Ps. XLVIII*, PG 29:445B.

<sup>27</sup> *HS XV.35*.

<sup>28</sup> *HS XV.35*.

<sup>29</sup> *Hom. 3*, PG 31:197D, Wagner, 431.

<sup>30</sup> *Hom. 3*, PG 31:197D. In order to describe the sociability of human nature in this homily Basil used the words *τὸ κοινωνικὸν τῆς φύσεως*.

<sup>31</sup> *Ps. XIV*, PG 29:261.

<sup>32</sup> *LR*, Clarke, 154.

<sup>33</sup> *Letter XCVII*, PG 32:493.



gave us the seed of these things, and accordingly demands their fruits, saying: “A new commandment I give unto you, that ye love one another.”<sup>34</sup>

This commandment people have to practice in the community of believers and also they have to promote this kind of living in the world around them.<sup>35</sup> God expects human beings to use their natural inclinations in order to live properly according to His plan which He prepared for them from the beginning of creation: “God the Creator ordered that we may need one another... in order that we may be linked with one another.”<sup>36</sup>

St Basil believes that there is a purpose in everything that God made to exist, and that this visible world is created as a place of wonderful order. It has a value in and of itself but it is also a place of education, a school where these human souls had the opportunity to learn and to develop.

You will finally discover that the world was not conceived by chance and without reason, but for an useful end and for the great advantage of all beings, since it is really the school where reasonable souls exercise themselves, the training ground where they learn to know God; since by the sight of visible and sensible things the mind is led, as by a hand, to the contemplation of invisible things.<sup>37</sup>

The ultimate goal of these human creatures was to achieve the “mind of Christ,”<sup>38</sup> to enter into personal relationships with God, to be in communion with Him,<sup>39</sup> and to become like God.<sup>40</sup> In St Basil’s work the realization of this “likeness” to God is perceived as humanity’s dignity and the purpose of his creation.<sup>41</sup> Unfortunately, the first humans, Adam and Eve, failed this enterprise and did not follow humanity’s destiny. Consequently, this image of God in them was corrupted and they lost the life according to their nature.<sup>42</sup>

---

<sup>34</sup> LR, Clarke, 157. St Basil also uses phrase “social animal” in his homily on *Ps. XIV.6*. See DelCogliano, 100.

<sup>35</sup> In spite of the fact that some passages of Basil’s ascetic works can be interpreted as favouring the constitution of particular communities, his *Ascetica* (both Long and Small) offer the understanding of the church as a community that is trying to live a perfect life in the middle of the world. It is obvious that Basil described mostly spiritual withdrawal from sinners and not a “bodily (*σωματικως*) withdrawal” from the world. *Letter II.2*. See also more details on this topic in Fedwick, *Church*, 18-19.

<sup>36</sup> LR VII, Clarke, 163.

<sup>37</sup> Hex. I.6

<sup>38</sup> *Ps. XLVIII*, PG 29: 445B.

<sup>39</sup> HS XV.35.

<sup>40</sup> HS I.2.

<sup>41</sup> *Ps. XLVIII.8*, PG 29:449BD.

<sup>42</sup> Orthodox thought tends to speak of the image of God as being distorted or diminished but never destroyed by human sin. See, for example, Lossky, *The Mystical Theology*, 124. See *Ps. LXI* where St

This brought people to a position where instead of reflecting the image of their Creator they began to resemble senseless animals.<sup>43</sup> Their sin led to “the alienation” from God and to the break of “close communion with God.”<sup>44</sup> This was equal to death because “God is Life, and the loss of life is death.”<sup>45</sup> “Death and its concomitants”<sup>46</sup> became the reality of the result of disobedience. The fall of humankind marked the immediate marring of the divine image in them and the primordial experience of community was destroyed.<sup>47</sup>

In St Basil’s thought as in many of the Eastern Fathers there is a way of distinguishing between ‘image’ (κατ’ εἰκόνα) of God and ‘likeness’ (καθ’ ὁμοίωσιν) of God.<sup>48</sup>

According to this thinking, the ultimate destiny of people was to achieve the likeness of God. Already in the beginning they had this divine “image” but the ‘likeness’ should be fully realised only at the end. What is present in the ‘image’ is the potential likeness with God. Through the “soul’s operations” of “man” it is possible to deploy this potential and to develop it into likeness of God when “man”<sup>49</sup> becomes what he/she was supposed to be from the beginning of the world.<sup>50</sup> In order to reach this purpose the divine image should be restored in people in a way that they would be able to use the faculties of their soul - knowledge and love. Fallen creatures were not able to do this with their own strength, so God acted in this world on “their behalf” and for their glorious future.

We were called back from death and made alive again by our Lord Jesus Christ Himself... He redeemed us from the curse... that He might bring us to the life of glory. And He was not content merely to quicken us when we were dead, but He

---

Basil compares the state of humans with the building that was shaken but not completely destroyed. PG 29:473C.

<sup>43</sup> *Ps. XLVIII.8*, PG 29:449BD.

<sup>44</sup> *HS XV.35*.

<sup>45</sup> *Hom. 9.7*, PG 31:345A. The Greek reads: *Ζωὴ γὰρ ὁ Θεός· στέρησις δὲ τῆς ζωῆς θάνατος*.

<sup>46</sup> *LR*, Clarke, 156.

<sup>47</sup> See Stanley J. Grenz, *Theology for the Community of God* (2<sup>nd</sup> ed., Grand Rapids: Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing Co, 2000), 192. St Basil believes that though both body and soul were corrupted by sin, human nature did not become totally depraved. See *Ps. LXI.3* (PG29:473CD). See the discussion of original sin and its effects on human nature in M.A. Orphanos, *Creation and Salvation according to St Basil of Caesarea* (Athens, 1975), 90-91.

<sup>48</sup> See more information about other Eastern Fathers in Maximos Aghiorgoussis, “Application of the theme ‘eikon theou’ (image of God) according to saint Basil the Great,” 275. St Basil followed the tradition which was already developed by previous Church Fathers such as Irenaeus and Athanasius.

<sup>49</sup> The word “man” is not related to gender; the meaning is a human being or mankind and includes both man and woman.

<sup>50</sup> See *Letter CCXXXIII. 1*.

bestowed the dignity of divinity, and prepared eternal resting places, surpassing all human thought in the greatness of their delight.<sup>51</sup>

Even after the first humans had fallen into sin “God did not neglect *them*.”<sup>52</sup> God did not abandon His plan for His creation but corrected it with due regard to what had happened in the past. Through His Son and the Holy Spirit God continued to lead this created world and people to their ultimate end to become perfect and to live in eternal glory. Through the Holy Spirit He continues to enlighten people in order to make their souls able to be qualified for the contemplation of God.<sup>53</sup> All these happen to people in the community of God, His Church, during and after their baptism. At that moment “the Spirit pours in the quickening power, renewing our souls from the deadness of sin unto their original life.”<sup>54</sup> Through the same Spirit in the Church

...comes our restoration to paradise, our ascension into the kingdom of heaven, our return to the adoption of sons, our liberty to call God our Father, our being made partakers of the grace of Christ, our being called children of light, our sharing in eternal glory, and, in a word, our being brought into a state of all “fullness of blessing,” both in this world and in the world to come.<sup>55</sup>

In St Basil’s thought the phrase “the world to come” means that this world “which was begun in time is condemned to come to an end in time.”<sup>56</sup> The existed “world must change” and all the changes will lead to “the end of all things and the regeneration of the age.”<sup>57</sup> This implies “the renewing of the world,”<sup>58</sup> or eschatological new creation. The re-creation of the world will result in the banishment of death and “the full enjoyment”<sup>59</sup> when “God, the Creator of the universe and the just Judge... rewards all the actions of life

---

<sup>51</sup> LR, Clarke, 156.

<sup>52</sup> LR, Clarke, 156.

<sup>53</sup> EHB I; PG 31:424C. The literal phrase in Basil is: “He who is not baptized is not enlightened”  
The Greek: ὁ δὲ μὴ βαπτισθεὶς οὐ πεφώτισται.

<sup>54</sup> HS XV.35.

<sup>55</sup> HS XV.36.

<sup>56</sup> Hex. I.3.

<sup>57</sup> Hex. I.4.

<sup>58</sup> Hex. I.3.

<sup>59</sup> HS XV.36.

according to their merit.”<sup>60</sup> The “end of humans” (του ἀνθρωπείου τέλους) will come with “the rule of God” and “the blessed life in the world to come,” which is the best possible future that God can provide for “the rational nature” (τῇ λογικῇ φύσει) of people.<sup>61</sup> The picture of the eschatological community in heaven (οὐράνιοις), which St Basil also calls “the Church” (ἐκκλησίᾳ) can be found in his exegetical work *On Psalm XLV*.<sup>62</sup> He describes this eschatological reality as a great and beautiful city, the new heavenly Jerusalem. In this city people will live together in peace and harmony, not only human souls but also all intelligential creatures and some pre-cosmic powers. Consequently, this vision of a future conveys Basil’s idea of God’s purpose for His people. They should be brought together in a corporate community and do not live as isolated individuals.

On one hand, St Basil conceives the continuous restoration of the image of God in people as the different stages of individual Christian perfection which included purification and *askesis*. He believes that this can help to “clean the Royal Image and restore its ancient form” through “the withdrawal of the passions which, coming afterwards gradually on the soul from its friendship to the flesh, have alienated it from its close relationship with God.”<sup>63</sup> On the other hand, he keeps reminding his listeners and readers that it is impossible to achieve the likeness of God without life in the community. This perfection should be performed through our experience of the community, otherwise “the greatest commandment of all and that which conduces to salvation (πρὸς σωτηρίαν) is neglected, and neither is the hungry fed nor the naked clothed.”<sup>64</sup>

---

<sup>60</sup> *Hex. I.4*. In Basil’s thought not only humans but the entire creation will be transformed into something divine and sinless. See this idea in M.A. Orphanos, *Creation and Salvation according to St Basil of Caesarea*, 155.

<sup>61</sup> *Ps. XLVIII.8*, PG 29:432A-B.

<sup>62</sup> *Ps. XLV*, PG 29:421CD, 424A. This is the Church of people who have “heavenly citizenship” and whose names are “written in Heaven.”

<sup>63</sup> *HS IX.23*.

<sup>64</sup> *LR*, Clarke, 164. PG 31:929B.

This statement implies that person's salvation in some sense depends on their life in the community. The eternal life in the "world to come" includes existing forever in fellowship with God and with other people when human nature will be present in its "fullness of blessing."<sup>65</sup> Perfected and redeemed people will live within a renewed creation, and enjoy the presence of their Creator, but this perfection of human nature should start in this world and in the community of believers. St Basil sees the Church as the place where God is present and where He works with His people.<sup>66</sup> In this sense the Church is an agent of this new creation where the Holy Spirit transforms and regenerates those who are willing to become like God.

Through His aid [*the Holy Spirit*] hearts are lifted up, the weak are held by the hand, and they who are advancing are brought to perfection... souls wherein the Spirit dwells, illuminated by the Spirit, themselves become spiritual, and send forth their grace to others. Hence comes foreknowledge of the future, understanding of mysteries, apprehension of what is hidden, distribution of good gifts, the heavenly citizenship, a place in the chorus of angels, joy without end, abiding in God, the being made like to God, and, highest of all, the being made God.<sup>67</sup>

"The being made God" can be interpreted as being made persons in special relations, being made a community which has a communion with God. People will receive "the heavenly citizenship," where their communication with God will be restored completely and where reconciliation with God will be reflected in their relations with other people. Therefore, God's intention for His creation is eschatological new creation and the establishment of community where people will be regenerated and transformed into the likeness of God.

---

<sup>65</sup> HS XV.36.

<sup>66</sup> Letter XCVII; PG 32:493. "The Lord has told us that he will be in the midst where two or three call on him in concord..." See also *Hom.* 3, PG 31:213A. "for you God among people" (*διὰ σέ Θεός ἐν ἀνθρώποις*).

<sup>67</sup> HS IX.23.

## Divine economy and the life of the Church<sup>68</sup>

St Basil's view of the Christian community is intimately linked with his understanding of the Trinity and the economy of every divine Person.<sup>69</sup> This economic activity means that they have varying functions but they are still involved in the same divine plan concerning God's working in the world and with His people. As we have seen in the account of creation the Church is the outcome of the Father's will which He shares with the Son and with the Holy Spirit when all of them are engaged in the economy which helps the realization of this special community. St Basil states that for "the Church of God" [the Father] alone "Christ died" and on this Church "He poured out the Holy Spirit richly".<sup>70</sup> There are distinct contributions of each Person of divine Godhead. In our examination of the elements of the divine economy that forms the basis for Basil's understanding of the Church, we will indicate the main characteristics of work done by each divine Person and connect this with his idea of such community as the Church.

For the purpose of this study we will discuss different aspects of economies of each Person of the Trinity on their own. However, we have to mention that in Basil's thought there is unity of God at the level of *ousia* and plurality of God as distinct *hypostaseis*. Already in his early theological discussion with Eunomius St Basil argues that there is "a unity of *ousia* between Father and Son, although what that essence is remains unknown."<sup>71</sup> Ten years later in his letter *To the notables of Neocaesarea* he explains in more details the same idea of unity including the Holy Spirit:

For of Father, Son, and Holy Ghost there is the same nature and one Godhead; but these are different names, setting forth to us the circumscription and exactitude of the meanings. For unless the meaning of the distinctive qualities of each be unconfounded,

---

<sup>68</sup> We will not discuss here Basil's understanding of the divine economy in general (it could be a good topic for a separate thesis) but we will look at the theological ideas which are connected with the life of the Church.

<sup>69</sup> As Rousseau noted, there are three main parts in Basil's theological thought: theology of Trinity, theology of human nature and the community "within which that nature had to operate." See Rousseau, *Basil of Caesarea*, 271.

<sup>70</sup> *De Jud.*, Clarke, 77. PG 31:653AB

<sup>71</sup> Ayres, *Nicaea and its Legacy*, 194. Ayres make a reference to *Contra Eunomium* 1.19.

it is impossible for the doxology to be adequately offered to Father, Son, and Holy Ghost.

...he who fails to confess the community of the essence or substance falls into polytheism, so he who refuses to grant the distinction of the hypostases is carried away into Judaism.<sup>72</sup>

Feeling the need to share again about the idea of unity of *ousia* and the distinction between *hypostaseis* two years later in a letter, addressed to his friend Amphilochius, St Basil writes:

The distinction between *ousia* and *hypostasis* is the same as that between the general and the particular; ... Wherefore, in the case of the Godhead, we confess one essence or substance so as not to give a variant definition of existence but we confess a particular hypostasis, in order that our conception of Father, Son and Holy Spirit may be without confusion and clear.<sup>73</sup>

The unity of God is also emphasized in St Basil's writings through the idea of the Father as the source of the Trinity which will be discussed below as part of the Father's economy.

### ***Economy of the Father in Basil's understanding of the Church***

We mentioned earlier in this chapter that St Basil believes in the Monarchy of the Father<sup>74</sup> which means that everything in the economy begins with the Father and united by Him. Every initiative of the Father is executed by the Son and by the Spirit in their conjoint action. The work which is related to the Church is conceived by the Father. He wills "that all men be saved and come to the knowledge of truth"<sup>75</sup> and He accomplishes it through the Son and the Spirit. In his treatise *On the Holy Spirit* defending the unity of God St Basil writes: "Let no one accuse me of saying that there are three unoriginate persons... The Originator of all things is One: He creates through the Son and perfects through the Spirit."<sup>76</sup> Later in chapter *XVIII* of the same treatise St Basil explains: "Divine

---

<sup>72</sup> Letter CCX.4-5.

<sup>73</sup> Letter CCXXXVI.6.

<sup>74</sup> We mentioned "Monarchy" when we discussed the creation of the first humans. See also *HS XVIII.47*. According to St Basil, as "the source of all gifts" the Father has a different "rank" among the Persons of the Godhead - He is always supposed to be the first. See *HS XVI.37-38*.

<sup>75</sup> *SR*, Clarke, 320. PG 31:1248C

<sup>76</sup> *HS XVI.38*.

knowledge ascends from one Spirit through the one Son to the one Father. Likewise, natural goodness, inherent holiness and royal dignity reaches from the Father through the Only-Begotten to the Spirit. Thus, we do not lose the true doctrine of one God by confessing the persons.”<sup>77</sup> Although Basil believes that God the Father is the Source of everything, he keeps reminding his readers that there is not any subordination: “Those who teach subordination, and talk about first, second and third, ought to realize that they are introducing erroneous Greek polytheism into pure Christian theology.”<sup>78</sup> In Basil’s opinion, there is “a communion” among the three Persons of the Trinity but the Father is “the first principle of existing things” and the Godhead is caused by Him.<sup>79</sup> Therefore, we come to a conclusion that in Basil’s thought God the Father creates the Church through the Son and He perfects her through the Spirit and all this is done in unity.

The term *hypostasis* helps St Basil to define the role of each divine Person and also the eternal relations of the Trinitarian Persons. There are unique hypostatic properties and attributes inherent in each divine *hypostasis*. As St Basil phrases it, “hypostasis is contemplated in the special property of Fatherhood, Sonship, or the power to sanctify.”<sup>80</sup> God reveals Himself as the Father of the only-begotten Son, and He is also the One from whom the Spirit proceeds. The *hypostasis* of the Father is the source and cause of the Son and of the Spirit. Consequently, in Basil’s thought, the personal relations inside the Trinity originate from the Father and “knowledge of His own nature naturally belongs to the Father first.”<sup>81</sup> The Father is “the Source of the relations whence the *hypostaseis* receive their distinctive characteristics.”<sup>82</sup> This relationship between the Father and the Son, between the Father and the Spirit, and between the Son and the Spirit is unique and

---

<sup>77</sup> HS XVIII.47, Anderson, 74-75.

<sup>78</sup> HS XVIII.47, Anderson, 75.

<sup>79</sup> HS XVI.38, Anderson, 61-62.

<sup>80</sup> Letter CCXIV. 4.

<sup>81</sup> Letter CCXXXVI.1.

<sup>82</sup> Lossky, *Mystical Theology*, 58-60.



mystical.<sup>83</sup> The revelation of God as Fatherhood, Sonship and Sanctification<sup>84</sup> introduces us into the eternal being of God. But this divine Paternity is not an anthropomorphism drawn from a human experience.<sup>85</sup> St Basil's apophatic approach guards against such interpretation. On the contrary, this Paternity is the foundation of human relationship and could be reflected analogically in the relations between people in His Church. It is "the Face of God turned toward the world."<sup>86</sup>

The economy of the Father is connected with His Monarchy and the divine initiative. He is the One who sends the Son, into whose likeness Christians are supposed to be transformed; and He also sends the Spirit who organizes the Church where the conditions are provided for such a transformation. All Trinitarian Persons work in unison, but in Basil's thinking the Father plays the role of original Source of everything and every action done by the Trinity, including creation of the Church and its development.

### ***Economy of the Son and the life of the Church***

The economies of Christ and the Spirit in Basil's thought belong together and they are hardly separated.<sup>87</sup> He states that, the Holy Spirit "being inseparably present was with the very flesh of the Lord" and the Son's "every operation was wrought with the co-operation of the Spirit."<sup>88</sup> St Basil insists that all "things done in the dispensation of the coming of our Lord in the flesh; – all is through the Spirit."<sup>89</sup> This leads us to a conclusion that when we discuss the economy of the Son we have to remember the role of the Spirit in it. At the same time, the economy of the Spirit is strongly related to the economy of Christ.

---

<sup>83</sup> *HS XVII.43.*

<sup>84</sup> *Letter CCXXXVI.6.*

<sup>85</sup> The idea is taken from Bobrinskoy, *The Mystery of the Trinity*, 268.

<sup>86</sup> Bobrinskoy, *The Mystery of the Trinity*, 268.

<sup>87</sup> In the Eastern Orthodoxy this tendency was kept and their understanding of the Church is founded on a "twofold divine economy": the work of Christ and the work of the Holy Spirit. See Lossky, *The Mystical Theology of the Eastern Church*, 156. See also Veli-Matti Kärkkäinen, *An Introduction to Ecclesiology* (Downers Grove: Inter Varsity Press, 2002), 23.

<sup>88</sup> *HS XVI.39.*

<sup>89</sup> *HS.XVI.39; see also XIX. 49.*

However, for the purpose of this study we will try to discuss some aspects of both economies, of the Son and of the Spirit, on their own.

In Basil's thought the existence of the community of believers, the Church, is connected with the coming to earth of the Son of God, who became the "*in-humanated* God" (τὸν ἐνανθρωπήσαντα Θεόν)<sup>90</sup> in whom the union of created and uncreated was realised because He was not "soulless flesh, but Godhead using flesh endued with soul."<sup>91</sup> He was "God in human nature" (Θεὸν ἐν ἀνθρώπου φύσει) who through the "economy of incarnation" descended to "mean and weak" humanity.<sup>92</sup> He came to "destroy death," and to give "a hope of resurrection."<sup>93</sup> St Basil believes that now Christ can reside in believers through the Holy Spirit<sup>94</sup> and He dwells "in the midst of the city" and "the name of this city is the Church."<sup>95</sup> There is always a corporate aspect in St Basil's thinking concerning the divine economy. It is not about individuals but about salvation for the whole of fallen humanity because "the holy and precious blood of Jesus Christ our Lord" was "shed for us all."<sup>96</sup>

The role of Christ in the divine economy is especially important because He is "the Mediator" between God and people.<sup>97</sup> St Basil compares His mediatory function in salvation with that of Moses, through whose help people were able to know truth and to receive the words of God. Christ, our "God and Saviour," can regenerate and renew us in

---

<sup>90</sup> Ps. XLV, PG 29:425C. Translation is mine. This word "*in-humanated*" was invented in order to communicate the real meaning of the Greek text. It is possible to use the English word "incarnated" which is a literal translation of another Greek word *σαρκώσεως*. Basil used this word in his *Letter CCLXV.2* and the meaning is slightly different.

<sup>91</sup> *Letter CCXXXVI.1.*

<sup>92</sup> Ps. XLIV.5, PG 29:400AB. See similar idea in *Hom. 27, On the Holy Birth of Christ*, PG 31:1460BC.

<sup>93</sup> *Hom. 3*, PG 31:213A.

<sup>94</sup> Ps. XLV, PG 29:429B. See another example, where Basil says that apostle "Paul had Christ speaking in him", Ps. XLIV.5, PG 29:397CD.

<sup>95</sup> Ps. XLV, PG 29:424B. The Greek reads: Ἐκκλησίᾳ τὸ τῆς πόλεως ἐφαρμόσει ὄνομα.

<sup>96</sup> Ps. XLVIII.4, PG 29:441A. This corporate way of thinking can be also noticed when St Basil refers to the Fall. He employs the first personal *plural* pronouns in his expressions connected to this event. He thinks of the whole mankind when he uses sentences which say that the Fall happened to "us," and it is result of "our" insult (PG 31:349C), and "we" have drawn death upon "ourselves" (PG 345AB). See this idea in Orphanos, *Creation and Salvation according to St Basil of Caesarea*, 92.

<sup>97</sup> *HS XIV.32.*

order that we can see “the great light of truth” ourselves.<sup>98</sup> He is also “the Peacemaker who makes peace and reconciles completely two in one new human,” and this reconciliation happens “in the heaven and on the earth” and all this through Christ’s “blood on the cross.”<sup>99</sup> In this sense salvation starts with the union of these two separated natures in Christ and it finishes with the union of God and humanity.<sup>100</sup>

Throughout his writings St Basil uses different titles for Jesus, which “Scripture designates Him,” in order to explain His role and activity: Shepherd, King, Physician, Bridegroom, Way, Door, Fountain, Bread, Axe, Rock, true Light, righteous Judge, and Resurrection. According to Basil these titles set forth “the variety of the effectual working which, out of His tender-heartedness to His own creation, according to the peculiar necessity of each, He bestows upon them that need.”<sup>101</sup> Each title refers to the particular action of Jesus that He has undertaken to help people to reach “the blessed end” that ‘through Him’ we may know the Father.”<sup>102</sup> Therefore, people have had their “approach to the Father through Him, being translated from ‘the power of darkness to be partakers of the inheritance of the saints in light’.”<sup>103</sup>

The divine economy is revealed as love poured out for humans and for a suffering world. This “Saviour’s love for mankind (*φιλανθρωπία*)”<sup>104</sup> is so great that He “patiently endured to suffer our infirmities with us, and condescended to our weakness.”<sup>105</sup> All these things He does voluntarily “working effectually for His own creation in goodness and in pity, according to the will of God the Father.”<sup>106</sup> For this purpose, Basil writes,

---

<sup>98</sup> *HS XIV.32.*

<sup>99</sup> *Ps. XXXIII.5*, PG 29:361C. See this idea also in *Ps. XLV*: “He himself is our peace, he it is who has made both one, that of the two he might create one new man.” The translation is from Way, *Exegetical Homilies*, 309.

<sup>100</sup> The notion of this idea can be found in *Letter XCVII*: “The Lord Himself undertook the economy, that by the blood of His cross He might make peace between things in earth and things in heaven.”

<sup>101</sup> *HS VIII.17*. The whole eighth chapter of St Basil’s book *On the Holy Spirit* describes the economy of Christ in a great detail.

<sup>102</sup> *HS VIII.18, 19.*

<sup>103</sup> *HS VIII.18.*

<sup>104</sup> This idea of *φιλανθρωπία* was developed later in the Eastern Orthodoxy and was connected with idea of “providence.” See Lossky, *Mystical Theology*, 139.

<sup>105</sup> *HS VIII.18*, Anderson, 36.

<sup>106</sup> *HS VIII.18.*

Those that have lapsed from the lofty height of life into sin He raises from their fall: for this reason He is Resurrection. Effectually working by the touch of His power and the will of His goodness He does all things. He shepherds; He enlightens; He nourishes; He heals; He guides; He raises up; He calls into being things that were not; He upholds what has been created. Thus the good things that come from God reach us “through the Son,” who works in each case with greater speed than speech can utter.<sup>107</sup>

St Basil believes that through the work which Christ had accomplished people were “called back from death and made alive again.”<sup>108</sup> They were “redeemed from the curse” and released from their “weaknesses” because He bore their “diseases” in order that they might be “healed.”<sup>109</sup> Commenting on *Psalm XLVIII* St Basil develops this metaphor and expresses the idea that Christ is “the Physician of our souls” (ὁ ἰατρὸς τῶν ψυχῶν) that provides help to all in need because of His love.<sup>110</sup>

As the result of their sin people were separated from God but He “assumed human flesh” in order to make them “once more His own” and to have fellowship with Him.<sup>111</sup> Through “the blood of the Only-begotten” (τῷ αἵματι τοῦ Μονογενοῦς) people were “set free from the dishonouring slavery.”<sup>112</sup> Christ alone, St Basil writes, “can offer a propitiation to God for us all.”<sup>113</sup> In order to enrich us, He “emptied Himself” (κενώσας ἑαυτὸν), taking up the condition of “a slave,” which in this context implies human nature.<sup>114</sup> According to St Basil, this unity of divine and human natures in Christ allows Him to “destroy death’s reign” and to “kill sin in the flesh.”<sup>115</sup> “The Redeemer” pays “the fine to death on our behalf”<sup>116</sup> and reconciles people to God. For Basil, this means, that the immediate aim of humanity’s redemption is salvation from sin. At the same time their salvation will be fully realized only in the age to come in their union with God. There is a

---

<sup>107</sup> *HS VIII.19.*

<sup>108</sup> *LR, Clarke, 156. See also HS XV.35.*

<sup>109</sup> *LR, Clarke, 156.*

<sup>110</sup> *Ps. XLVIII, PG 29:433C. The Greek: τοῦ ἱατροῦ φιλανθρωπία.*

<sup>111</sup> *Letter CCLXI.2.*

<sup>112</sup> *Hom. 4, PG 31: 224A*

<sup>113</sup> *Ps. XLVIII.4, PG 29:441A.*

<sup>114</sup> *Ps. XXXIII.5, PG 29:361D. This idea of κενώσις is important for the understanding of Christ’s economy and was developed further by other theologians. See Lossky, *Orthodox Theology: Introduction* (Crestwood: St. Vladimir’s Seminary Press, 1989), 100-102.*

<sup>115</sup> *Letter CCLXI.2.*

<sup>116</sup> *Letter CCLXI.2.*

“great mystery of salvation,” Basil writes, which includes “the gradual progress of our education, while being brought to perfection in our training for godliness.”<sup>117</sup> We have to mention that when St Basil uses a word “godliness” he implies first of all Christ-likeness. Christ’s ability to unite human and divine natures provides for humans the opportunity to become like Him after they obtain “the citizenship in heaven.”

Renunciation, then, so we have seen, is a loosing of the chains which bind us to the present material and transitory life, a freeing from human obligations, making us more ready to start in the God-ward way... And greatest of all, it is beginning of our being made like unto Christ (*της πρὸς Χριστὸν ὁμοιώσεως*)... which likeness unless we have first attained, it is impossible to reach the manner of living prescribed by the Gospel of Christ.<sup>118</sup>

From the previous passages we can conclude that human sin and the fall led to an alienation from God and to a deadly “disease”<sup>119</sup> that the human race had to suffer. The only medicine or solution to this problem was the Incarnation of the Son and His blood on the cross which provided the way to a communion with God and to life in the Heavenly Kingdom (*ἐν οὐρανοῖς βασιλεία*).<sup>120</sup> In this case St Basil’s thinking demonstrates the important Eastern view of Christ’s economy. Although the whole economy passes through the cross, the main goal of this pass remains as it had been from the moment of creation: the union of created humanity with God.<sup>121</sup> St Basil does not stop at the cross and suffering but moves on to the Heavenly Kingdom and the new community. He looks at redemption from an eschatological perspective.<sup>122</sup> St Basil leads us through the cross but then goes beyond to the Church of the “firstborns” whose names are “written in the

---

<sup>117</sup> *HS XIV.32.*

<sup>118</sup> *LR, Clarke, 169. PG 31:940C.*

<sup>119</sup> See also *Hexaemeron IX.4* where Basil says that “a disease of the soul” is all vice.

<sup>120</sup> *LR, Clarke, 169.*

<sup>121</sup> See more on this topic about the ecclesiological differences based on the economy of Christ in the Eastern and Western theologies in Zizioulas, *Lectures in Christian Dogmatics*, 133-134.

<sup>122</sup> The eschatological perspective which we see in St Basil became one of the distinctive features of the Eastern theology. According to Florovsky, “Eschatology is not just one particular section of the Christian theological system, but rather its basis and foundation, its guiding and inspiring principle, or as it were, the climate of the whole of Christian thinking. Christianity is essentially eschatological, and the Church is an “eschatological community,” since she is the New Testament, the ultimate and the final, and, consequently, “the last.” George Florovsky, “The Patristic Age and Eschatology: Introduction” in *Aspects of Church History* (The Collected Works of Georges Florovsky, vol. 4, Vaduz: Buchervertriebsanstalt, 1987), 63.

heaven” and to “the rejoicing assembly of saints” (*πανήγυρις ἁγίων*).<sup>123</sup> He believes that “through flesh” and “by his own suffering” Christ “might grant us freedom from suffering.”<sup>124</sup> The Lord Jesus Christ Himself, Basil says, became “a curse on our behalf and underwent the most dishonourable death, that He might bring us to the life of glory” and for this life He “prepared eternal resting places.”<sup>125</sup>

As we mentioned earlier the understanding of salvation in St Basil has a corporate aspect which is reflected in the economy of Christ. St Basil conveys this idea through one of the great biblical images – the image of the Church as Body of Christ.<sup>126</sup> Basil states that Christ died for the Church<sup>127</sup> and all who believe in Him are “the members of Christ.”<sup>128</sup> He is the Saviour (*Σωτηρ*) but He does not save people in order to let them live in isolation but to join His Body, the Church.<sup>129</sup> This image implies that ultimate salvation cannot be achieved individually because it is a process of restoration<sup>130</sup> which includes co-operation with the other members of the Body. In this sense the economy of Christ results in the incorporation of redeemed people into the new community, His Body, which has the ability to have fellowship with God.

### ***Economy of the Spirit and the life of the Church***

In St Basil’s theology the Spirit is indivisibly united with the Father and the Son.<sup>131</sup> Basil’s thought moves from the economic to the immanent Trinity, “from the Spirit’s activity in salvation and baptism to the nature of his being and his relationship with the

<sup>123</sup> *Ps. XLV.4*, PG 29:424A.

<sup>124</sup> *HS VIII.18*.

<sup>125</sup> *LR*, Clarke, 156.

<sup>126</sup> *Letter CCXLIII.1*, *Ps. XLIV.5*, PG 29:397CD, *De Jud.*, PG 31:660A, *HS V.9*.

<sup>127</sup> *De Jud.*, PG 31:653AB.

<sup>128</sup> *Ps. XLIV.5*, PG 29:397CD.

<sup>129</sup> *Ps. XLIV.5*, PG 29:397CD.

<sup>130</sup> *Hom. 20.1*, PG 31:525AB. St Basil believes that the part of the process of restoration is the restoration of the original state of humans which they had at the moment of creation and which they lost after the fall. See also this idea in his homily *On Psalm LXI* where St Basil compares the state of a human with a building which God can restore after the reconstruction. PG 29:473C. See Way, 344.

<sup>131</sup> *HS XVI.37*. Basil believes that “in every operation the Spirit is closely conjoined with, and inseparable from, the Father and the Son.” See also *XIII.30* “the Spirit is ranked together with God... on account of the natural fellowship” and “invited by the Lord”; *XVI.38*, *XVIII.45*, *XIX.49*, *XXVI.63*, *XXVII.68*.

Father and the Son.”<sup>132</sup> The Holy Spirit is the facilitator of “the close relationship with God” through which believers can cry in their hearts “Abba, Father” and as such He is called “the Holy Spirit of our God” and “the Spirit of His Son.”<sup>133</sup>

As was previously noted, Basil’s understanding of the economy of the Spirit is strongly linked with his view of the economy of the Son. “Is it Christ's advent? The Spirit is forerunner,” Basil says. “Is there the incarnate presence? The Spirit is inseparable.”<sup>134</sup> At the same time the Spirit executes His own functions and He has His own role. The Holy Spirit works here on earth in order to fulfil the divine plan of salvation and help people to recognize God’s presence through different actions.

Working of miracles and gifts of healing are through the Holy Spirit. Demons were driven out by the Spirit of God. The devil was brought to naught by the presence of the Spirit. Remission of sins was by the gift of the Spirit, for "ye were washed, ye were sanctified... in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ, and in the Holy Spirit of our God."<sup>135</sup>

In the same way as Basil describes the work of the Son through His titles, so he explains the operations of the Spirit through the titles designated to the Spirit: Supplier of life<sup>136</sup> or the Lord of life,<sup>137</sup> the Spirit of adoption,<sup>138</sup> origin of sanctification (*ἀγιασμου γένεσις*),<sup>139</sup> the Paraclete or the Comforter,<sup>140</sup> and the Spirit who loves people (*φιλανθρώπου Πνεύματος*).<sup>141</sup> Explaining these titles St Basil implies that the life of a believer should be transformed by the Spirit in the community through adoption,

---

<sup>132</sup> See Hildebrand, *The Trinitarian Theology of Basil of Caesarea*, 174. See the same idea in Bobrinskoy, *The Mystery of the Trinity*, 233. At that time some theologians ignored the Holy Spirit and the others adopted the teaching known as Pneumatomachianism which denied the equality of the Holy Spirit with Father and Son. They believed that the Holy Spirit was a creature, or a force, or a power of God the Father. Basil was concerned that this wrong teaching about the Holy Spirit entered the Church and he wrote one of his main treatises on behalf of the Holy Spirit. See more information in Olson, *The Story of Christian Theology*, 177. For better understanding of the context see also Lewis Ayres, *Nicaea and its Legacy*, 211-217.

<sup>133</sup> *HS XIX.49*. See also *De Fide*, Clarke, 96.

<sup>134</sup> *HS XIX.49*.

<sup>135</sup> *HS XIX.49*.

<sup>136</sup> *HS IX.22*.

<sup>137</sup> *HS XIII.29*.

<sup>138</sup> *HS XI.27f*.

<sup>139</sup> *HS IX.22*.

<sup>140</sup> *HS IX.23; XIX.48*.

<sup>141</sup> *Ps. XXXIII.5*, PG 29:361D.

sanctification and love. At the end of his treatise *On the Holy Spirit* he adds a remarkable statement about the role of the Spirit as a Trinitarian Person:

...it is impossible to see the image of the invisible God, except by the illumination of the Spirit... through the illumination of the Spirit we behold the effulgence of the glory of God; and through the impress we are led up to Him [Father] of whom He [Christ] is the impress and exact representation.<sup>142</sup>

St Basil believes that this is the Spirit who “confirms”<sup>143</sup> the work in the divine economy and He is the “perfecting cause”<sup>144</sup> through which “all things” are done in the economy of Christ.<sup>145</sup> In this sense the Holy Spirit fulfils the economy of Christ which leads to the creation of eschatological community. The Holy Spirit as “the Comforter and the Spirit of truth” is bringing together a corporate body of people who have been saved (τοὺς σωζομένους).<sup>146</sup> Through prophets and apostles the Spirit gathers them from different nations, and with different socio-economic status, and both genders male and female.<sup>147</sup> He breaks down all the existing borders which divide society. Using the words from Psalm 19:4 St Basil shows that the Spirit of God is able to reach any person who lives on the earth, including any geographical location, and help him or her join the community. People from different cultural settings and from different languages can be assembled together.<sup>148</sup> This means that the work of the Spirit in the process of salvation is connected with the establishment of a different social reality. According to St Basil, this work is directed toward the formation of the Body of Christ, which consists of restored people who were reconciled to God and with each other.<sup>149</sup> The Holy Spirit is the Person of the Trinity who brings order in the Church and equips believers with the gifts for their ministry. As St Basil phrased it:

<sup>142</sup> *HS XXVI.64f.* The translation is from George Lewis, 123. St Basil refers to Hebrew 1:3.

<sup>143</sup> *HS XVI.38.*

<sup>144</sup> *HS XVI.38.*

<sup>145</sup> *HS XVI.39*, see also *XIX.49.*

<sup>146</sup> *Ps. XLVIII*, PG 29:433A.

<sup>147</sup> *Ps. XLVIII*, PG 29:433B.

<sup>148</sup> *Ps. XLVIII*, PG 29:433A. Although everything is done through the apostles and prophets the main idea behind the text is that the Holy Spirit is the One who makes it happen.

<sup>149</sup> *Ps. XLVIII*, PG 29, 433D.



And is it not plain and incontestable that the ordering of the Church is effected through the Spirit? For He gave, it is said, “in the church, first Apostles, secondarily prophets, thirdly teachers, after that miracles, then gifts of healing, helps, governments, diversities of tongues,” for this order is ordained in accordance with the division of the gifts that are of the Spirit.<sup>150</sup>

The diversity of gifts exists because God “put the members in the body, everyone of them as He willed”<sup>151</sup> and these gifts are given for the purpose of serving one’s neighbours. Through all of them the Spirit constitutes the Church and makes it one living organism. St Basil discusses this topic in several of his works,<sup>152</sup> and in each he emphasizes the interdependence of believers. As the members of the body of Christ they should have “the same care for one another, according to the inborn spiritual communion of their sympathy.”<sup>153</sup> “As parts in the whole, Basil continues, so are we individually in one Spirit, because we all “were baptized in one body into one spirit.”<sup>154</sup>

Although St Basil often uses as examples Old Testament saints<sup>155</sup> and New Testament martyrs he does not think that the Spirit is concerned only with these people, leaving the rest of believers to themselves. He is convinced that the Holy Spirit fills everybody with His power and that He distributes His energy according to “the portion of faith” of each person.<sup>156</sup> Basil thinks that every believer receives the Spirit individually as people receive sunshine, and that the grace which is sent forth is “sufficient and full for all mankind, and is enjoyed by all who share it, according to the capacity, not of His [Spirit] power, but of their nature.”<sup>157</sup> Basil’s vision of the Christian life is a community where all people are actively involved in service to God and to fellow believers. Commenting on 1 Cor. 12.8-10, he explains that in each of the gifts “the recipient has as much for others’ sake as for

---

<sup>150</sup> HS XVI.39f. See also *Letter CCXXVII* in which Basil asserts that the ordering in the church is not “merely man’s ordaining” but it is done “with the aid of the Holy Spirit.”

<sup>151</sup> HS XXVI.61. George Lewis, 119.

<sup>152</sup> *The Morals LXXX.4*, Clarke, 128; *The Morals LX*, Clarke, 117; *De Fide*, Clarke, 96; *De Jud.*, Clarke, 81; *LR*, Clarke, 165; *HS XVI.39f*, *XXVI.61*; *Hom. 3*, PG 31:213A.

<sup>153</sup> HS XXVI.61.

<sup>154</sup> HS XXVI.61.

<sup>155</sup> See, for example, *LR*, Clarke, 149.

<sup>156</sup> HS IX.22. In his *Letter CV* Basil describes the Spirit and His work in the lives of individual believers as follows: “The Holy Ghost, having His subsistence of God, the fount of holiness, power that gives life, grace that makes perfect, through Whom man is adopted, and the mortal made immortal.”

<sup>157</sup> HS, IX.22f.

his own. So that of necessity in the community life (*τῷ κοινωνικῷ βίῳ*) the working of the Holy Spirit in one man passes over to all the rest at once.”<sup>158</sup> Basil is anxious to persuade his readers to support each other and to use gifts for the good of others.

Preaching on envy, he explains that some people in the Church are more skilled to interpret “the Sacred Scriptures” by “the grace of the Holy Spirit,” but everyone in the Church benefits from their gift. As St Basil phrases it, “The benefit is yours and through your brother the gift of doctrine is sent to you, if only you are willing to accept it.”<sup>159</sup> He strongly believes that according to the Gospel it is dangerous for a Christian to live alone because his/her gifts become “useless.”<sup>160</sup> Only when people live together they may “enjoy” their own gifts and even multiply a gift “by imparting it to others and, reap the fruits of other men's gift as if they were *their* own.”<sup>161</sup>

Following the Bible, St Basil repeats that these fruits are “love, joy (*χαρὰ*), peace”<sup>162</sup> but he pays extra attention to “joy.” He believes that God allows all people to experience this “joy” in order to remind them of what they have lost. However, righteous people may have a constant feeling of “divine and heavenly joy” (*εὐφροσύνη*) because it is a sign of the presence of the Holy Spirit in them.<sup>163</sup> This is the reason, Basil writes, that the Holy Spirit is called the “unction of joy.”<sup>164</sup> As the body of the Lord (*ἡ σὰρξ τοῦ Κυρίου*) was anointed by the Spirit so all people who are “sharers of Christ” can partly receive the same anointing.<sup>165</sup> They are given, Basil goes on, “a portion” of “fellowship of the Spirit” (*Πνεύματος κοινωνία*).<sup>166</sup> Through the *κοινωνία* they are united to each other and can

<sup>158</sup> LR, Clarke, 164-165.

<sup>159</sup> Hom. 11, Wagner, 472.

<sup>160</sup> LR, Clarke, 165.

<sup>161</sup> LR, Clarke, 165. It is singular “his” instead of “their” in the original text.

<sup>162</sup> Ps. XXXII, PG 29:324C. Basil refers to Gal. 5:22.

<sup>163</sup> Ps. XXXII, PG 29:324C.

<sup>164</sup> Ps. XLIV, PG 29:405A. St Basil uses the words “joy” and “gladness” as synonyms. He says that the fruit which the Spirit grows in believers is *χαρὰ* and this is the reason the Spirit Himself is called the oil of *ἀγαλλιάσις* (extreme joy).

<sup>165</sup> Ps. XLIV, PG 29:405A. The Greek reads: *τοῦ μετέχοντος τοῦ Χριστοῦ*.

<sup>166</sup> Ps. XLIV, PG 29:405A.

keep “the concord of one body.”<sup>167</sup> At the same time the Holy Spirit makes believers spiritual through “the fellowship with Himself.”<sup>168</sup> As Thomas F. Torrance noted, “in Basil's thought the Holy Spirit is indivisibly linked to and comes from the *κοινωνία* of the Father and the Son, and is as such the immediate Source of our communion with the Holy Trinity.”<sup>169</sup> The activity of the Spirit makes the Church perceive union with God not only as a future event but as a present experience.

St Basil explains that through the gift of grace during baptism the Holy Spirit provides a way for a person to receive “the adoption of sons” and to join the community of God's children.<sup>170</sup> In this community, where the same Spirit “distributes the gifts according to each recipient's worth”<sup>171</sup> and where He keeps the order,<sup>172</sup> believers are supposed to grow and to learn from Him that “teaches us who were blinded, and guides us to the choice of what profits us.”<sup>173</sup>

According to St Basil, through the Spirit believers are nourished in the Church and they are provided with “the food for souls.”<sup>174</sup> This food is “the words of God” which are read in “the Church of God” every time people get together.<sup>175</sup> Basil believes that these “words” belong to the community<sup>176</sup> and they are sent by God as gifts (*Θεόπεμπτα δώρα*).<sup>177</sup> In his homily *On Psalm I* he conveys the idea that the words of the Scripture can be used not only as food but also as medicine.<sup>178</sup> Written by the Holy Spirit, the Scripture contains “common remedies for our souls” in order that all of us as humans can find

---

<sup>167</sup> *Letter XC*. In this epistle to the western brothers St Basil shows that he includes into “the fellowship of the Spirit” all believers from the East and the West.

<sup>168</sup> *HS IX.23*.

<sup>169</sup> Thomas F. Torrance, *The Trinitarian Faith* (Edinburgh: T&T Clark, 3<sup>rd</sup> ed., 1997), 315. He refers to *On the Holy Spirit* 30, 38, 45, 48, 63f, 68.

<sup>170</sup> *HS XV.36*.

<sup>171</sup> *HS XV.37*. See also *Hom. 3*, PG 31:213A

<sup>172</sup> *HS XVI.39*.

<sup>173</sup> *HS XIX.50*.

<sup>174</sup> *Ps. LIX*, PG 29:464C. The Greek: *τροφήν ψυχών*. See also the same idea in *Hom. 2*, PG 31:197B.

<sup>175</sup> *Ps. LIX*, PG 29:464C.

<sup>176</sup> Literally Basil is saying “words of God are ours.” PG 29:464C.

<sup>177</sup> *Ps. LIX*, PG 29:464C.

<sup>178</sup> *Ps. I*, PG 29:209A.

“healing” (τὸ ἰάμα) - each one for his own moral ills.<sup>179</sup> Basil explains that, since the Holy Spirit knows that it is hard to lead “the human race to goodness,” He provides this treatment through Psalms. The same way wise doctors use honey to hide the bitter taste of medicine.<sup>180</sup> He calls Psalms “the voice of the Church”<sup>181</sup> because they serve for “the new comers as the first lessons, they make the advanced believers grow, and they make the perfect ones firm.”<sup>182</sup> Basil repeats this argument in his *Letter II* when he says that through the study of inspired Scripture a person can find “as from some dispensary, the due medicine for his ailment.”<sup>183</sup> All this is done by the Spirit that people can “really teach their souls.”<sup>184</sup> For this reason He is called “the common Corrector of life, the great Teacher, the Spirit of truth.”<sup>185</sup>

Salvation in St Basil’s thought is a process of restoration of the image of God, a process when humans gradually receive knowledge of God, one which is impossible without the presence of the Spirit.<sup>186</sup> It is a process of progressive illumination inside the community of believers when “souls wherein the Spirit dwells, illuminated by the Spirit, themselves become spiritual, and send forth their grace to others.”<sup>187</sup> Basil compares this effect with the reflection of sunbeams from a shining surface which has been cleaned of every impurity. Once a believer is cleansed and indwelt by the Spirit he becomes a source of spiritual light for others in the community.

---

<sup>179</sup> *Ps. I*, PG 29:209A.

<sup>180</sup> *Ps. I*, PG 29:212B.

<sup>181</sup> *Ps. I*, PG 29:213A. The Greek: Ἐκκλησίας φωνή.

<sup>182</sup> *Ps. I*, PG 29:213A. The Greek reads: εἰσαγομένοις στοικείωσις, προκοπτόντων αὐξήσις, τελειουμένων στήριγμα.

<sup>183</sup> *Letter II.3*.

<sup>184</sup> *Ps. I*, PG 29:212B.

<sup>185</sup> *Ps. I*, PG 29:216AB. Under “corrector” Basil meant “one who sets right.” See διορθωτής in *A Patristic Greek Lexicon* (ed. G.W.H. Lampe, 4<sup>th</sup> ed., Oxford: AT the Clarendon Press, 1976), 373. The idea that “sin is a serious and difficult matter” and that the Scripture is the remedy which “heals the sick and establishes the sound in more perfect health” also can be found in Basil’s homily *Give Heed To Thyself*. See this homily in Wagner, 436.

<sup>186</sup> *HS XVIII.47*; see also *XV.36*; *XVI.38*.

<sup>187</sup> *HS IX.23*. The only problem with this idea in Basil is its association with his argument when he proves the divinity of the Holy Spirit. For Basil the Holy Spirit is divine because He can grant the divine grace. In the statement quoted above people through becoming spiritual can “send forth grace to others”. No doubt, they do not become divine but still the meaning of this expression is not clear. See this argument in Torrance, *Theology in Reconstruction*, 225.

There are two important characteristics of the Spirit which are connected with this “spreading” of spirituality in the community. The Spirit is the One who is holy and who loves people (ἁγίου καὶ φιλανθρώπου Πνεύματος).<sup>188</sup> Consequently, the economy of the Spirit, which is described by St Basil, presupposes that the basis for this growing illumination or perfection is not only sanctification but love toward people, love toward our neighbours, or in other words the relationships of love in the community. This love, Basil posits, is the greatest of all things “which characterises the Christian.”<sup>189</sup> Although the whole Godhead is the source of that love, the role of the Spirit is to communicate with all humans and to dispense the gift of grace to those who have been baptised. According to St Basil, the Spirit is “to be present in a manner” even with the unworthy who “have once been sealed” in the community through the baptism. The Spirit is “awaiting the salvation which follows on their conversion.”<sup>190</sup> Even people who are not converted yet can be considered potential participants of the eschatological community during their earthly life because of the presence of the Spirit. Only after their death in the day of “redemption” or the day of “judgement”

...they which have grieved the Holy Spirit by the wickedness of their ways, or have not wrought for Him that gave to them, shall be deprived of what they have received, their grace being transferred to others; or, according to one of the evangelists, they shall even be wholly cut asunder, the cutting asunder meaning complete separation from the Spirit. The cutting asunder, as I have observed, is the separation for aye of the soul from the Spirit.<sup>191</sup>

Using the scriptural idea behind the text of Psalm 6:5 St Basil confirms that there is not any chance for people to change their destiny “in Hell” “because the succour of the Spirit is no longer present.”<sup>192</sup> Consequently, they will be separated from fellowship with

---

<sup>188</sup> *Ps. XXXIII.5*, PG 29:361D.

<sup>189</sup> *De Fide*, Clarke, 97. See also *The Morals*, Clarke, 131.

<sup>190</sup> *HS XVI.40*. This phrase implies that a person who was baptised is not necessarily converted. The conversion may happen later in his life and the Holy Spirit waits for this event.

<sup>191</sup> *HS XVI.40*.

<sup>192</sup> *HS XVI.40*. Basil perceives “the Hell” as an ultimate alternative reality which opposes the Heavenly Church. Interestingly enough, in his thought it is not so much connected with a physical torment as with the spiritual sufferings. First of all, there will be no presence of God and, consequently, no joy in the Spirit and no divine light. Secondly, those people who “acted wickedly” await “reproach and shame.” As St Basil put it: “For they will see in themselves their disgrace, and the marks of their sins. And perhaps the

the whole Godhead and with those who live in eschatological communion and in the presence of God.<sup>193</sup> In this sense the ultimate salvation and the ultimate punishment depends on the economy of the Holy Spirit and strongly connected with life in the community.

## Conclusion to chapter 2

In many of his works St Basil expresses the conviction that from the beginning of this world the intention of God's work was the creation of an environment in which humans were supposed to live and grow in love. They were created with the ability to have relationship with Triune God and with each other in order to acquire better knowledge of their Creator that at the end they may attain the mind of Christ. St Basil believes that their own nature makes them seek the fellowship which can help them develop in this direction. The community of people could become the best place for the realization of God's plans for all humans who are in need of interpersonal relations. The fact that the first couple broke God's instructions and alienated themselves from Him led to the correction of the initial scheme and to the implementation of the actions concerning the salvation of humanity. For this reason, according to the initiative of the Father, the Church is born through the Son and formed by the Spirit. In this sense, the historical existence of the Church is shaped by the economy of the Trinity. In Basil's thinking, it is not the Church that saves people through its actions but it is God the Trinity who creates the Church in order to gather all His children, to restore His image in them, and to re-establish the relationships of love. The life of such community is Trinitarian in the sense that it stands on three pillars: divine economy of the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

---

shame in which the sinners are destined to live forever is more horrible than the darkness and the eternal fire." See *Ps. XXXIII.4*, PG 29:360-361. The translation is from Henry Bettenson, *The Later Christian Fathers* (8<sup>th</sup> ed., Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1987), 90. St Basil also believes that "to be alienated and estranged from God is more intolerable even than the punishment that awaits us in hell." He thinks of punishment after death mostly not in terms of a physical pain but psychological and compares it to the "deprivation of light to the eye." See *LR*, Clarke, 155.

<sup>193</sup> *De Fide*, Clarke, 95f-96.

In Basil's doctrine of the Trinity the primacy of the Father guards his understanding of the Church from a one-sided concentration on the Spirit or on the role of Christ. Being inseparably linked with each other both economies, that of the Son and of the Spirit, are concerned with the future of humanity. St Basil insists that Christ assumes human flesh in order to restore the relationship with humanity and to bring peace between heaven and earth. Being both God and Man He provides the way for salvation in a special community which is His Body, where people have the opportunity to attain His likeness. St Basil emphasizes the idea that this community is constituted by the Spirit. Together with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit fulfils the divine plan of salvation through His own operations. He transforms the lives of the people in the Church illuminating the believers and leading them up to union with God. The Spirit assembles all who have been saved into a different social reality where He destroys the barriers which previously separated people on earth. Coming from *koinonia* of the Trinity He creates a new way of fellowship among believers in the Church. St Basil believes that in this community where the Spirit keeps an order, the believers are supposed to grow serving each other with the gifts which they receive from Him. Guiding Christians through the process of transformation, the Holy Spirit together with the other Persons of the Trinity waits for their salvation which will be fully realized only in the age to come when people will be able to live in the presence of Triune God in their Heavenly home that was prepared for them from the moment of their creation.

### Chapter 3

## TRINITARIAN COMMUNION, *φιλανθρωπία*, AND THE CONCEPT OF THE CHURCH

A rather obvious conclusion from the previous chapter is that the whole economy of salvation is viewed by St Basil in terms of God gradually leading humanity toward life in community, in which at the end we will enjoy fellowship with God in the kingdom of Heaven.<sup>1</sup> The Trinitarian communion will be revealed to believers through abiding with the Father and the Son and the Holy Spirit. The Greek word which St Basil uses for this community of people in heaven is *ekklesia* that usually translated as the Church.<sup>2</sup> As we already noticed, St Basil's understanding of the Church is from an eschatological perspective. This leads us to a concept of the Church on earth in which the structure should in some sense reflect the future relationships of the eschatological community of believers who will abide in God and who will become like God.<sup>3</sup>

We have to pay attention to the fact that in Basil's thought there are at least two dimensions of the Church: the church here on earth and the church in heaven.<sup>4</sup> This way of thinking makes St Basil's ecclesiology extremely complex: the Church exists in the world and for the people from the world in order to change this world and bring them to the reality which is not of this world, where it still can be called the Church.<sup>5</sup> Once again we can see how St Basil uses an apophatic approach, but this time he applies it to the mystery of the Church. He wants his readers and listeners to understand that the earthly Church is not the end. The Church does not exist only here and now, but in some mystical way

---

<sup>1</sup> *HS IX.23*, and *XV.36*; *Ps. XLV*, PG 29:421CD, 424A.

<sup>2</sup> *A Patristic Greek Lexicon*, 429-432.

<sup>3</sup> *HS IX.2*. The idea of "becoming like God" in Basil's writings is discussed in Jules Gross, *The Divinization of the Christian According to the Greek Fathers* (Anaheim, California: A&C Press, 2002), 190-193.

<sup>4</sup> *Ps. XLV*, PG 29:421CD, 424A.

<sup>5</sup> See this idea in Lossky, *Mystical Theology of the Eastern Church*, 175.



continues its existence in the divine realities which we do not yet know and cannot yet understand.

## Heavenly dimension of the Church

Although the Church in St Basil's thought is divided in two parts, heavenly and earthly, these two parts are not isolated. While there is a distinction between these two dimensions of the Church, there is a strong bond between them as well. According to St Basil, they are not completely separated: the members of the Church who have already experienced physical death, some of whom died as martyrs, continue to be in communion with believers on earth. He believes that people from the earthly congregation can call upon the intercession of martyrs to aid them. St Basil urges believers to glorify them, to call upon them, and converse with them in prayer because these martyrs are still involved in the life of the earthly Church.<sup>6</sup> For example, he mentions the miracles that have been effected by the martyr Jullitta.<sup>7</sup> One of the reasons why St Basil expresses great interest in the relics of martyrs in several of his letters<sup>8</sup> is the belief that they can confer sanctity both on the place they occupy and on those who are gathered there.<sup>9</sup> In his sermon *On Feast of Forty Martyrs* St Basil declares that the prayer of these forty martyrs, in concordance with God, guarantees the presence of God.<sup>10</sup> In Basil's understanding the role of these saints in the life of people on earth is so important that he calls them "the common guards of the human race."<sup>11</sup> For Christians they are "the good partners in problems, the fellow-workers in prayers, [and] the most powerful intercessors".<sup>12</sup>

---

<sup>6</sup> See homilies *InMJ* (PG 31:237-261) and *InSQM* (PG 31:508-525A).

<sup>7</sup> *InMJ* 2, PG 31:241AB.

<sup>8</sup> The relics of martyrs are mentioned in St Basil's letters: *Letter XLIX*, *Letter CLV*, *Letter CXC VII*.

<sup>9</sup> *InMJ* 2, PG 31:241AB. The Greek reads: ἀγιάζει μὲν τὸν τόπον, ἀγιάζει δὲ τοὺς εἰς αὐτὸν συνιόντας.

<sup>10</sup> *InSQM* 7, PG 31:524A. He uses a verse from Matt 18:20 as the basis for this statement.

<sup>11</sup> *InSQM* 7, PG 31:524C. The Greek: ὡς κοινοὶ φύλακες τοῦ γένους τῶν ἀνθρώπων.

<sup>12</sup> *InSQM* 7, PG 31:524C.

In the middle of the fourth century Christians were still persecuted in some places.<sup>13</sup> It was a time when becoming a martyr and passing from the earthly dimension of the Church to the heavenly one was not an abstract option. Martyrs were real Christians whom people knew very well.<sup>14</sup> This caused St Basil to perceive the Church as a present historical gathering and as a future one at the same time. He asserts that these saints, belonging already to the heavenly dimension of the church, still share the burdens of those believers who struggle to finish their journey on earth. Using his words, the “church of martyrs” is a source of “inexhaustible grace” and of “prepared help for Christians.”<sup>15</sup>

St Basil does not explain the structure of the church in Heaven in great detail but he gives us some hints which clarify what people can expect when they get there. One of the descriptions can be found in his homily *On Psalm CXIV*:

That is the country of living, in which there is no night, in which there is no sleep, the image of death, in which there is no eating, no drinking, the supports of our weakness; in which there is no disease, no pains, no remedies, no courts of justice, no businesses, no arts, no money, the beginning of evil, the excuse for wars, the root of hatred; but a country of the living, who have not died through sin, but live the true life in Jesus Christ, to whom be glory and power forever.<sup>16</sup>

This is a gathering of the “firstborns” whose names are “written in the heaven”.<sup>17</sup> They experience joyful life and the main source of this joy is the Holy Spirit with which they are constantly filled.<sup>18</sup> St Basil believes that this heavenly Church is similar to an earthly city.<sup>19</sup> The same way as every city on earth is ruled by a law this heavenly Jerusalem is ruled by a law. Of course, there is a difference: in heaven, the Church is ruled by the heavenly law (*κατὰ νόμον τον οὐράνιον*) which distinguishes it from any earthly society.<sup>20</sup> This is a community where “all the manner of life required by the Gospel”

---

<sup>13</sup> *Letter CLV*.

<sup>14</sup> See *Letter CXCVII* in which St Basil affirms the genuineness of the relics of Dionysius.

<sup>15</sup> *InSQM* 7, PG 31:521C.

<sup>16</sup> *Ps. CXIV*. See Way, 358-359.

<sup>17</sup> *Ps. XLVIII*, PG 29:448C. See also *Ps. XLV.4*, PG 29:424A.

<sup>18</sup> *Ps. XLV*, PG 29:421CD. See also *Ps. XXXII.1*, PG 29:324B-D.

<sup>19</sup> *Ps. XLV*, PG 29:421CD and *InSQM*, PG 31:509B.

<sup>20</sup> *Ps. XLV*, PG 29:421CD.

which is “a forecast of the life that follows on the resurrection”.<sup>21</sup> Therefore, it is possible for believers to fulfil all its rules after they pass to this new life and attain likeness to Christ (*της πρὸς Χριστὸν ὁμοιωσεως*).<sup>22</sup> According to St Basil, people on earth are not able to understand or completely imagine the structure of this city until they reach it, because the city of God or the heavenly Church is beyond human comprehension.<sup>23</sup>

St Basil believes that all citizens live in peace and harmony in this heavenly city which is the final destination for all saints. To all who are “children in Christ” is granted the same place of rest.

While one has reached his rest another arrives, another hurries on, but one and the same end awaits them all. He has outstripped us on the way, but we shall all travel the same road, and the same hostelry awaits us all.<sup>24</sup>

Basil’s phrase “settled way of life” from the homily *On Psalm XLV* tells us that these citizens will not move from there anywhere else.<sup>25</sup> Also his use of the term “heavenly citizenship”<sup>26</sup> implies that this is their homeland to which they belong.<sup>27</sup> It reminds us of the famous Roman citizenship that provided privileges and protection in the ancient world. Christians have hope that someday they will be able to live in this great city, called the heavenly Church, but until death they are still on their earthly journey toward their “eternal habitations.”<sup>28</sup>

There is an interesting detail in Basil’s vision of the Church in heaven. All faithful people from all ages, all generations and all nations will live together in this city. This new eschatological community will consist not only of New Testament believers but Old Testament believers as well.<sup>29</sup> As children of God, believers will spend the eternal life in the company of others who lived before them: patriarchs, apostles, martyrs, confessors,

---

<sup>21</sup> *HS XV.35.*

<sup>22</sup> PG 31:940C; *LR*, Clarke, 169.

<sup>23</sup> *Ps. XLV*, PG 29:421CD, see also *LR*, Clarke, 156.

<sup>24</sup> *Letter V.2.*

<sup>25</sup> *Ps. XLV*, PG 29:421CD.

<sup>26</sup> *Ps. XLV*, PG 29:421CD.

<sup>27</sup> See also this idea of heavenly homeland in *InSQM*, PG 31:509B. See also his *Homily 4* where Basil states: “Your fatherland is the heavenly Jerusalem.” See *Hom. 4*, PG 31: 236C.

<sup>28</sup> *Letter V.2*

<sup>29</sup> *LR*, Clarke, 149

and those who were obedient to God from the beginning. All these people are called saints and fellow-citizens.<sup>30</sup> Christians have to remember that they are not the first representatives of humanity in this heavenly Church. St Basil persuades them to “follow in the steps” of these faithful people who lived in the Old Testament times: King David, Job, the prophet Daniel.<sup>31</sup> Following the example of these saints, believers can expect for themselves “a life of blessedness” and “joy among the angels in the presence of Christ.”<sup>32</sup> They will live in the “heavenly Jerusalem, where thousands of angels are found, the assembled first-born, the thrones of apostles, the seats of prophets, the scepters of patriarchs, the crowns of martyrs, and the praises of the just.”<sup>33</sup>

Although the Church in Heaven is in some sense beyond history and will continue its existence after the consummation of all things, it is still the same Church of God which He started to create on earth. In Basil's thinking this new life in the eschatological community and fellowship with Triune God is the greatest reward for all believers from all generations and from all ends of the world. Using a verse from 1 Cor. 2:9, St Basil confirms that this heavenly Church is something wonderful that God prepared only for those who love Him.<sup>34</sup> The idea behind this verse is quite significant for Basil's ecclesiology: the Church is the place prepared by God where we build the relationships that we will keep even in the eternity after our death. The most important of all is our relationship with God whom we will see face to face in heaven and who will be visibly present in the Church, after which it is our relationships with our fellow Christians, this future “rejoicing assembly of saints.”<sup>35</sup>

---

<sup>30</sup> LR, Clarke, 149. St Basil does not explain the conditions in which these saints exist right now. He also does not say anything about a pre-existence of the Church as some invisible mystical reality and he does not call the grouping of these Old Testament saints the Church. However, St Basil shares his conviction that this part of humanity which was faithful to God during their earthly lives will live in the heavenly Church together with all the New Testament martyrs and saints.

<sup>31</sup> LR, Clarke, 149.

<sup>32</sup> LR, Clarke, 149.

<sup>33</sup> *Exhortation to Holy Baptism*, PG 31:444C. Translation is from T. P. Halton, *Baptism: Ancient Liturgies and Patristic Texts* (ed. A. Hamman, Staten Island: Alba House, 1967), 87.

<sup>34</sup> Ps. XLV, PG 29: 421CD.

<sup>35</sup> Ps. XLV.4, PG 29:424A.

## Earthly dimension of the Church

The eschatological perspective from which St Basil perceives the destiny of humans and the divine economy shapes his understanding of the Church on earth. According to this perspective, the ultimate purpose of the Triune God for humanity is the establishment of a community in which at the end all the faithful will be made “partakers of the grace of Christ” and will share “eternal glory.”<sup>36</sup> This implies that the hope for such “unseen rewards” should determine their earthly behaviour. In one of his homilies “*On Selfish Wealth and Greed*” St Basil motivates his listeners to use their wealth here on earth in a proper way and to help those who are in need. He teaches that for their “stewardship of these corruptible things” their reward shall be glory everlasting. In the heavenly Church they will become fathers of “a multitude of children” and “mankind from the very beginning will call *them* blessed.”<sup>37</sup> In other homilies he uses negative arguments in order to convey the same idea to his listeners: “the name of dishonest man is not written in the book of living and he does not belong (is not counted among) to the Church of firstborns.”<sup>38</sup> In this sense the rewards and lives of believers in the heavenly Church depend on their actions and lives in the earthly Church. As St Basil puts it,

And in the present time that we may live in a way well pleasing to Him by more vigorous avoidance of what is forbidden and the more earnest observance of what is approved, so that, in the future age of immortality, we may be able to escape the wrath that comes upon sons of disobedience and be found worthy of eternal life and the heavenly kingdom promised from the Lord Jesus Christ to all “who keep the covenant and remember his commandments to do them.”<sup>39</sup>

St Basil believes that there is a continuity between the earthly reality and the future state of being when believers receive “crowns of righteousness.”<sup>40</sup> Although all who live

---

<sup>36</sup> *HS XV.36.*

<sup>37</sup> *Hom. 6, PG 31: 265D.* In the original text it is *thee* instead of *them*.

<sup>38</sup> *Ps. XLVIII. PG 29:448C,* translation is mine.

<sup>39</sup> *De Jud., Clarke, 89.* In a homily on *Ps. XXVIII* Basil also says that “our labor here is our provision for the future life. And that one who here bears glory and honor to the Lord through his good works will treasure up for himself glory and honor according to the just requital of the Judge.” See the translation in A. C. Way, 194. See also *The Morals I.5* in Clarke, 101. There can be found the same idea that “after departure from this life there is no opportunity for good deeds” which will be measured by Christ.

<sup>40</sup> *Hom. 6, PG 31: 266AB.* Similar notion can be found in Basil’s *Address to Young* where in chapters VIII-X he calls his hearers to earthly life of virtue as preparation for the heavenly life that is to

in the heavenly city share the glory, they have different portions because “spiritual glory shall be distributed to each in proportion as he shall have nobly played the man.”<sup>41</sup> St Basil does not have any doubts that there are “differences of dignities”: for as “star differeth from star in glory, so also is the resurrection of the dead.”<sup>42</sup>

In order to achieve the state of all “fullness of blessing”<sup>43</sup> people have to begin their process of perfection in the earthly community where they must evolve together with other believers. St Basil sees this process as a corporate experience because it is intended for all who are longing for citizenship in the Heavenly Kingdom.<sup>44</sup> “The mystery of salvation” in Basil’s thought is perceived as the gradual progress of human education, in which they are brought to perfection in their training for godliness,<sup>45</sup> where godliness is always connected to love toward others. It starts with elementary, easier lessons which lead to total self-denial and humbleness.<sup>46</sup> The best example of this love is that which God Himself showed to His disciples in order that they could follow and teach others.

For, behold, the Lord, for the greatness of His love of men was not content with teaching the word only, but that accurately and clearly He might give us a pattern of humility in the perfection of love He girded Himself and washed the feet of the disciples in person.<sup>47</sup>

This kind of attitude toward their “brethren” God expects from all believers in the Church. St Basil uses the examples of “faithful servants” such as Moses or Paul as sufficient proof that it is possible to reach that “measure of love towards one’s neighbour.”<sup>48</sup> They manifested this great love through their willingness to sacrifice their lives for the salvation of all their brethren, even though God did not demand it. In this

---

come. See a discussion of this idea in Arthur G. Holder, “Saint Basil the Great on Secular Education and Christian Virtue,” *Religious Education* 87:3 (1992): 407-410.

<sup>41</sup> *HS XVI.40.*

<sup>42</sup> *HS XVI.40.*

<sup>43</sup> *HS XV.36.*

<sup>44</sup> See *Hex. V.6.*

<sup>45</sup> *HS XIV.33.*

<sup>46</sup> *LR, Wagner, 246. See also HS XIV.33.*

<sup>47</sup> *LR, Clarke, 166.*

<sup>48</sup> *LR, Clarke, 158.*

manner they rejected the individualistic way of thinking and demonstrated the natural human longing for life in community which God had planted in them.<sup>49</sup>

Basil's arguments for the fellowship of love in the Church are rather simple: he starts from God's attitude toward humanity and moves to what He had commanded. As we already mentioned in the previous chapter, St Basil believes that all persons of the Trinitarian communion love humanity and the goal is to bring people to a new stage where they will "abide" in Christ's love as He abides in His Father's love.<sup>50</sup> The Father wills "that all men be saved and come to the knowledge of truth" and He acts in the history through the Son and the Spirit.<sup>51</sup> The "love to humanity (*φιλανθρωπία*) of the Saviour" leads Him to *kenosis*, the embodiment, and to the sufferings on the behalf of humanity.<sup>52</sup> The love of the Spirit, St Basil demonstrates through His title *φιλανθρώπου Πνεύματος*, is the Spirit who loves humans.<sup>53</sup> Since the ultimate goal of humans is godlikeness and the love toward people is an essential feature of Godhead then we come to the conclusion that the immediate goal of all believers is growth in love. This is the reason that one of the main themes to which Basil returns again and again is the mutual love among believers.<sup>54</sup>

Throughout his works St Basil insists that love is the principle which holds the Church together<sup>55</sup> and that it is the distinguishing characteristic of the Christian community.<sup>56</sup> He

---

<sup>49</sup> *LR II*, Clarke, 154. See also *HS V.7*, "the Father loves the Son".

<sup>50</sup> *LR II*, Clarke, 154.

<sup>51</sup> *SR*, Clarke, 320.

<sup>52</sup> *HS VIII.18*.

<sup>53</sup> *Ps. XXXIII.5*, PG 29:361D. Brian E. Daley makes an interesting observation in his article concerning the Cappadocian Fathers and their rhetoric of philanthropy: "In the tradition of Hellenistic ethics, the concept was hardly new. Originally identified above all with love of the gods for the human race, the *philanthropia* was also most often seen, in classical literature as a quality to be praised – and thus encouraged – in tyrants and kings..." Therefore, he asserts, Basil's plan of action with the aid of two Gregories and other supporters was "to reaffirm the Christian version of the public side of the philosophical and religious life that pagan Hellenism had admittedly failed to realize". See Brian E. Daley, s.j., "Building a New City: The Cappadocian Fathers and the Rhetoric of Philanthropy," *Journal of Early Christian Studies* 7:3 (1999), 434-438.

<sup>54</sup> According to Francis Young, "The spirit of self-sacrificial love for others is at least the mainspring of Basil's teaching." Young, "Cappadocians," 155.

<sup>55</sup> *Letter LXX*.

<sup>56</sup> *De Fide*, Clarke, 97. See also *The Morals*, Clarke, 102, 131. See the same idea in Klaus Koschorke, *Spuren der Alten Liebe: Studien zum Kirchenbegriff des Basilios von Caesarea* (Freiburg, Schweiz: Universitätsverlag Freiburg Schweiz, 1991), 17. "*Liebe und Frieden*, so Basilios, sind das himmlische Erbe das der Herr seiner Kirche hinterlassen hat (Joh 13,35; 14,27). Damit stellen sie zugleich die beiden Grundbestimmungen der Kirche dar und sind die Merkmale, an denen der Leib Christi erkannt

believes that people need to cooperate with each other in order to fulfill God's plan for them and to accomplish what they are supposed to do. In his homily *On Psalm XXXIII* St Basil explains that since the mind of one person is not able to understand the greatness of God then there is a need for others. They are gathered for the fellowship (εἰς τὴν κοινωνίαν) in order to discover together the laws of their Triune Creator. The more they learn how everything works in the universe the more they will praise God.<sup>57</sup> In Basil's thought, the knowledge of God, which people have to gain, is closely connected with salvation and their ultimate purpose.<sup>58</sup> He explains: "What is the goal of our calling - that there is set before us the being made like to God so far as man's nature allows. Now no likeness is possible without knowledge (ὁμοίωσις δὲ οὐκ ἄνευ γνώσεως), nor can there be knowledge without lessons."<sup>59</sup> In this sense the salvation and the eschatological future of all humans depends on their cooperation with other believers. According to the previous idea from *Psalm XXXIII*, only together are they able to discover "What is God like?" and "What is His plan for them?" This leads us to the concept of the Church as a community of believers where people have to keep close relationships with each other in order to learn together as much as possible about God. Consequently, it will help them to understand how they can attain the likeness of God and to create the community which God the Trinity had intended for them.

According to St Basil, the foundation for these close relationships among believers should be love toward God and love toward their neighbours because "it is well known to every disciple of Christ that in these two all is contained."<sup>60</sup> The first of these commandments tells us how we should act in return for all God's gifts: He is so good that

---

waren kann" (Love and peace are the heavenly inheritance which the Lord has left to his Church (John 13:35). Thus, they also represent two basic rules of the Church and they are the features by which the Body of Christ can be detected). Translation is mine.

<sup>57</sup> Ps. XXXIII.3, PG 29:357AB.

<sup>58</sup> See a good analysis on this topic in Maximos Aghiorgoussis, "Image as 'Sign' (*semeion*) of God: Knowledge of God through the Image According to Saint Basil", *The Greek Orthodox Theological Review* 21 (1976):19-54.

<sup>59</sup> HS I.2, PG 32:69B. George Lewis, 18.

<sup>60</sup> Letter IX.1.



He does not ask for any recompense except “being loved in return.”<sup>61</sup> The second commandment completes the first and is linked to it,<sup>62</sup> for the one “who loves his neighbour fulfils love toward God, since God accepts the favour as conferred on Himself.”<sup>63</sup> All the other commandments join these two and “form an interconnected whole”<sup>64</sup> which is based on love.

St Basil believes that the observance of all commandments is “necessary for attainment of our salvation” because salvation is not only about calling on the name of the Lord.<sup>65</sup> It is about doing God’s will as He wills with a disposition of love towards Him.<sup>66</sup> In other words it is about our eternal personal relationship with God which should be based on mutual love and our obedience. On the one hand, when “we excel in the love of God” this love “at the same time animates us to the observance of the Lord’s commandments.” On the other hand, through the fulfilment of the commandments “love itself will be lastingly and indestructibly preserved.”<sup>67</sup> Explaining this idea, St Basil emphasizes that commandments should be considered as the means through which the kingdom of heaven can be attained.<sup>68</sup> However, God did not leave believers alone with this task but He is “faithful” and helps them to “keep His commandments by the grace of Christ in the Holy Spirit.”<sup>69</sup>

Through the commandments (*διὰ τὸν ἐντολὼν*) people have the opportunity “to perfect their lives” and “to ascend to God.”<sup>70</sup> In this sense God provides for people the means and conditions in the Church which can help them to attain all the needed

---

<sup>61</sup> *LR*, Clarke, 156.

<sup>62</sup> *LR*, Clarke, 152.

<sup>63</sup> *LR*, Clarke, 158.

<sup>64</sup> *LR*, Wagner, 225.

<sup>65</sup> *LR*, Clarke, 147.

<sup>66</sup> *LR*, Clarke, 148.

<sup>67</sup> *LR*, Wagner, 243.

<sup>68</sup> *LR*, Wagner, 224.

<sup>69</sup> *De Fide*, Clarke, 98.

<sup>70</sup> *Hom. 3*, PG 31:213A.

knowledge in order to receive their “crowns of righteousness” and to become a part of the Heavenly Kingdom.<sup>71</sup>

So in training us for the life that follows on the resurrection the Lord sets out all the manner of life required by the Gospel, laying down for us the law of gentleness, of endurance of wrong, of freedom from the defilement that comes of the love of pleasure, and from covetousness, to the end that we may of set purpose win beforehand and achieve all that the life to come of its inherent nature possesses.<sup>72</sup>

God also gives them the teachers who can guide them while they are growing in love.

He has planted for us, so to say, props, in establishing in His Church apostles, prophets, teachers; and raising our thoughts by the example of the blessed in olden times... He wishes that the claspings of love, like the tendrils of the vine, should attach us to our neighbours and make us rest on them, so that, in our continual aspirations towards heaven, we may imitate these vines, which raise themselves to the tops of the tallest trees.<sup>73</sup>

What seems very important for St Basil is the idea that the relationships of love can be practised by believers despite our human differences.<sup>74</sup> He states that this fellowship (*κοινωνία*) brings people together in peace (*εἰρήνῃ*)<sup>75</sup> even if they oppose each other in the world because of their lifestyle. But in order to establish and to keep these relationships, St Basil teaches, they have to forget about their privileges and their riches when they enter the Church of God.<sup>76</sup> The Church is a community of reconciliation where people can be reconciled not only to God but to each other as well. This reconciliation takes place among people who in any other circumstances would not be able to communicate at this level. In Basil’s words, “through the Church they are habituated to love (*agape*).”<sup>77</sup> This implies that Triune God structured the Church on earth in a way that through love brings people closer to the community in which they will live hereafter, and where the criteria to measure their dignity will be different. It is not their material

---

<sup>71</sup> See also *De Fide*, Clarke 97.

<sup>72</sup> *HS XV.35*.

<sup>73</sup> *Hex. V.6*.

<sup>74</sup> *Ps. XLVIII*, PG 29:433D. In some sense this idea is reflected in the current popular expression - “reconciled diversity”. See C. Gunton, “The Church on Earth: the Roots of Community,” in *On Being the Church: Essays on the Christian Community*, Edinburg: T&T Clark, 1989), 66.

<sup>75</sup> *Ps. XLVIII*, PG 29:433D. Literally in text it is “the fellowship of calling” which implies that these people were called to this fellowship by God.

<sup>76</sup> *Ps. XLVIII*, PG 29:436A. The Greek reads: *τὴν Ἐκκλησίαν τοῦ Θεοῦ*.

<sup>77</sup> *Ps. XLVIII*, PG 29:433D. The Greek: *διὰ τῆς Ἐκκλησίας*.

possessions or their social rank but their ability to love according to God's commandments that will be considered by God in the community for which they were made originally.

Although St Basil teaches that "the love of God is not something that is taught" and that it is more like a "seed" which humans have from the moment of their creation, he believes that this inherent tendency can be cultivated.<sup>78</sup> Therefore, having within themselves this inclination to love and the ability to keep the commandments, believers are called to develop and nurture this implanted gift. Then the Church can become for them "the school of God's commandments" where they are enabled by God's grace "to exercise it with care, to nourish it with knowledge, and to bring it to perfection."<sup>79</sup> But we have to remember that the grace of God and the love of God toward people is the most important condition for the existence of this "school". It is God the Trinity, who planted the seed of love into humans, and He calls people into this special communion, and only because of His love and mercy they can be saved.<sup>80</sup>

Discussing the idea of God's merciful attitude toward humanity in the homily *On Psalm XXXII*, St Basil comes to a concept of the church as a place where sinners can be spiritually healed. He believes that God is a merciful Judge and His intention is to pardon anyone who sincerely repents. The sinner is still able to become a participant in God's generous and gracious gifts, but he has to humble himself, to regret all his dishonest deeds, and to confess openly what he had done in secret. All these actions lead to the most important step: the sinner has to ask "brethren" to work with him together in order to receive healing (*πρὸς τὴν ἰάσιν*).<sup>81</sup> This way the love of the community works as medicine and helps to restore a lost brother (or sister) to fellowship in this community and even to fellowship with Triune God. St Basil even compares Christians with doctors, who "with much compassion by their knowledge of the teaching of the Lord healing the

---

<sup>78</sup> LR, Wagner, 233.

<sup>79</sup> LR, Clarke, 153. See also the idea of "training ground" in *Hex. I.5, I.6*.

<sup>80</sup> Ps. XXXII.3, PG 29:329D.

<sup>81</sup> Ps. XXXII.3, PG 29:329D-332AB.

diseases of souls, [have] to win for them health in Christ and perseverance.”<sup>82</sup> In this sense the restoration of God’s image in a particular person can be facilitated by other believers and through their friendship. The Church then becomes a place where people who recognize their problems can be assisted in their sincere attempts to restore their true identity and dignity. This love, which God the Trinity wants people to have and to practice, transforms them into true humans.<sup>83</sup>

The notion that friendship with God is closely connected with friendship among believers and with the perfection in love can be also found in Basil’s homily *On Psalm XLIV*.<sup>84</sup> Once again St Basil uses the examples of Moses and of the disciples who were able to reach the highest level of perfection in love here on earth.<sup>85</sup> This kind of love can bind all of them together as friends and sustain their community. At the same time he asserts that vicious people cannot be friends with saints and with God (*φίλοι Θεου*) because a bad disposition of the heart is not compatible with friendship.<sup>86</sup> This conclusion is based on the exegesis of verse John 15.15: Basil states that it possible for perfected people to know truly the Beloved One (implied Son of God) and to become His friends.

Already at this point we can notice that in Basil’s thought there is a tension in the attitude of the Church toward the sinner, which is in fact twofold. The Church should give its love and support to the sinner in order to restore them to the community but the sinner cannot be a part of community because he/she cannot be a friend to God or to saints. Moreover, St Basil teaches that the sin of one person affects the entire community. He believes that sin does not remain in one soul alone but “infects also those who have not

---

<sup>82</sup> *The Morals*, Clarke, 129.

<sup>83</sup> In Basil’s thought man without love ceases to be a human because he “becomes more brutish than the brutes.” *HS XXX.78*. See this idea in Fedwick, *The Church*, 118. See also the end of the homily *On Psalm XLVIII* where Basil explains that a man who “did not perceive his own dignity but bowed down to the passion of the flesh, hath been compared to senseless beasts, and made like to them.” The translation is from Way, 331.

<sup>84</sup> *Ps. XLIV.2*, PG 29:392A-D. Interestingly enough Son of God is called in this passage *πατήρ φιλάνθρωπος* for all creation. See PG 29:392A.

<sup>85</sup> *Ps. XLIV.2*, PG 29:392BC. See also PG 29:392A, the literal translation is “perfect or complete capacity of love” (*τὸ τέλειον χωρησαι της ἀγάπης*).

<sup>86</sup> *Ps. XLIV.2*, PG 29:392CD.

manifested zeal for good.”<sup>87</sup> In this sense all the believers are interdependent and the whole Church suffers when one of them receives the “infection” of sin. St Basil uses several illustrations from the Old and New Testaments which support this idea. He starts with the statement that when a person commits a sin it is harmful to the entire community, and that this does not depend on the multitude of sins or their magnitude.<sup>88</sup> Every sin should be judged as disobedience toward God. Using the story of Achan (Jos.7) St Basil makes a conclusion that his sin

...became the cause of destruction, not only to himself alone, but also to his wife and children... And the punishment of sin was already about to seize upon all the people as well, like a flame, (and that too, though they knew not what had happened, nor had they even excused the sinner).

St Basil comes to the same conclusion when he examines the New Testament text from 1 Cor. 5.1-2. The man, who was accused of the sin, “is not only himself handed over to Satan for destruction... but involves the whole Church together in those accusations because it had taken no proceedings against the sin.”<sup>89</sup> St Basil wants to warn his readers of the danger linked to sin and the presence of sinners in the community. He reminds them that in the Old Testament the judgement even of sins committed in ignorance was so severe that sacrifice was “necessary for expiation.”<sup>90</sup> After this statement Basil asks the important question: “What should be said about those who knowingly commit sin or who by their silence acquiesce in the sinful deeds of others?”<sup>91</sup> This way he introduces us to the idea of the necessity of repentance and to the notion of penance for committed sins.<sup>92</sup>

St Basil gives a detailed answer to the above question in his *Letter XXII*, where he explains the important principle which Christians are supposed to follow in love when

---

<sup>87</sup> *De Jud.* Clarke, 85.

<sup>88</sup> *De Jud.* Clarke, 81f.

<sup>89</sup> *De Jud.* Clarke, 87.

<sup>90</sup> *De Jud.* Wagner, 45.

<sup>91</sup> *De Jud.* Wagner, 45.

<sup>92</sup> This idea of penitents who should not only repent but they “need also fruits meet for repentance” can be found in *The Morals I.4*, Clarke, 101, where under “fruits” Basil means “good deeds” which “please” God. See the next sentence in *The Morals I.5*, Clarke, 101.

they are dealing with a sinner amongst them.<sup>93</sup> First of all, he wants all people in the community to understand that the mistakes and sins of any person should be considered a loss for the whole community. Therefore, “the Christian ought in Christ's love to grieve and be afflicted at his brother's faults.”<sup>94</sup> At the same time Christians cannot be “indifferent or silent before sinners.” They have to show such a person that what they did was wrong, but they “ought to do so with all tenderness, in the fear of God.”<sup>95</sup> The main idea behind the explanations in the text of this Epistle is that the believers have to do all these things “with the object of converting the sinner.”<sup>96</sup> After a person is accused of a sin which they have committed for the first time in their life as a believer, they must repent in order to receive a pardon. If they continue to repeat their wrong doing after the first and second admonition, they must be brought before the authorities. If even after that step the sinner “fails to be set right he is to be cut off from the rest as one that maketh to offend, and regarded as a heathen and a publican.”<sup>97</sup> The only reason for such strict rules or the severe actions is “the security of them that are obedient.”<sup>98</sup> Once again St Basil reminds Christians of the influence of sin on the community, paraphrasing the meaning of Proverb 29.16: “when the impious fall the righteous tremble.”<sup>99</sup> The attitude of love toward the sinner should not bring danger to the existence of the whole community. There must be some limits which do not allow Christians to get into the situation in which love can be abused by the sinner. The structure of the Church and its rules should protect its members from the destruction caused by sin.

---

<sup>93</sup> Although this is one of St Basil's so called “ascetic” epistles it is possible to use it in connection with life of all Christians who want to follow the way of perfection. The ideas from the ascetic writings can be equally well applied to the Church because St Basil was trying to integrate this practice into the life of the Church. See this idea in John Meyendorff, *The Byzantine Legacy in the Orthodox Church*, 201. See this thought also in Fedwick, *The Church*, 20-22.

<sup>94</sup> *Letter XXII.3.*

<sup>95</sup> *Letter XXII.3.*

<sup>96</sup> *Letter XXII.3.*

<sup>97</sup> *Letter XXII.3.*

<sup>98</sup> *Letter XXII.3.*

<sup>99</sup> *Letter XXII.3.*

In his later work St Basil describes a penitential system in more detail, which can be found in his ‘canonical’ letters to Amphilochius,<sup>100</sup> but the principles that he applies to life in the Church are the same as are mentioned in his earlier *Letter XXII*. The goal of penance is the rehabilitation and restoration of the sinner into the Church.<sup>101</sup> The stages of recovery were created in order to help him/her not to fall back into their sins. As we already noted, the basis for all actions taken by Christians should be love which includes both the sinner and the rest of community. All other members are warned by these rules and they are also guarded from the influence of evil.<sup>102</sup> Through this system and its practice Christians are reminded that their lives are bound together in the community and that the bond is “the law of love”<sup>103</sup> which includes assistance to a person who has to “recognize his defects” and who needs someone that “can reprove him” and “set him right with kindness and compassion.”<sup>104</sup> This “law of love” calls for cooperation between believers in the fight against sin in the community.

In Basil’s thought the Church on earth serves as the place where all people learn to live together striving for perfection in love. They are expected to go through the transformation themselves and to help others to move in the same direction toward union with Triune God leaving behind all iniquities, sins and weaknesses.

### Conclusion to chapter 3

Although St Basil’s understanding of the Church in two dimensions is rather complex, we can notice a particular logic behind this idea that gives hope to believers on earth. This helps Christians feel supported by the larger *Ekklesia* which includes all the faithful throughout the history of humanity. In this sense the identity of the members of the

---

<sup>100</sup> These are *Letters CLXXXVIII, CXCIX, CCXVII*. See the chronological table of the life and works of Basil in Fedwick, *The Church*, 133-155. Accordingly, the *Letter XXII* was written in 368, the *Letter CLXXXVIII* in 374, and the *Letters CXCIX* and *CCXVII* in 375.

<sup>101</sup> *Letter CCXVII.LXXXII*.

<sup>102</sup> *Letter CCXVII.LXXXIV*.

<sup>103</sup> *LR*, Clarke, 163. Although St Basil uses this term in a different work it perfectly conveys his idea of love in these circumstances.

<sup>104</sup> *LR*, Clarke, 163.

Church is formed by the understanding that they have different citizenship and belong not only to a local community but to the Heavenly realm as well. Life in the eschatological community together with the other saints will be their reward from Triune God when they continue their existence in the divine realities after death.

From what has preceded we can also conclude that St Basil describes the Church as a community of people who are gathered by God's love (*φιλανθρωπία*). The Trinitarian love toward humanity builds up the community and encourages its members to love each other. God the Trinity structured the life of this community on earth in a way that each person has the opportunity to develop new and better relationships, which lead to reconciliation and peace. According to St Basil, the Church is a place where people may receive healing and recover from their sins. For each woman and man the means are provided to reach the full measure of love and to restore their dignity. In order to fulfill these purposes Christians have to follow God's commandments or God's "law of love." They must support each other's efforts on the way to their ultimate destiny, their heavenly home, where they will continue to keep these relationships of love with Triune God and with other members of the Church.



## Chapter 4

### PERSONS OF THE TRINITY AND THE METAPHORS OF THE CHURCH

St Basil does not explain the nature and the essence of the Church in a systematic way because it was against his method of epistemology and his apophatic approach. In his opinion, the Church was created by Triune God and it is a mystery like other theological realities. His language of the Church is often the language of analogy which reflects the Eastern mystical way of thinking.<sup>1</sup> In his writings St Basil introduces a wide range of metaphors of the Church that are closely connected with the Persons of the Trinity. We will try to follow Basil's method of interpretation and logic so that we can grasp the broader application of these key metaphors. This analytical approach contributes to the proper understanding of his ideas and can help us to clarify his concept of the Church.

#### God as the Father and the Church as the mother

St Basil's idea of the Trinity uses the language of *ousia* and *hypostaseis* to address the question of the distinctness between the three divine Persons. In his opinion, each divine *hypostasis* is "contemplated in the special property."<sup>2</sup> For God the Father this "property" is revealed as His Fatherhood.<sup>3</sup> In his writings St Basil expresses the idea that God is the real Father of the whole of humanity and human parents are only instruments for the procreation of children.<sup>4</sup> Trying to prove Eunomius wrong and suggesting the correct understanding of the Father and the Son in his second book *Against Eunomius*, St Basil comes to a conclusion that God can be called our Father in "the original true meaning" of

---

<sup>1</sup> In the writings of the contemporary Orthodox theologians we still can find similar approaches to the Church. As Michael Pomazansky noted in his *Orthodox Dogmatic Theology* the character of the Church can be best explained by the biblical metaphors because it is "difficult to embrace in a short verbal formula" and "the life of the Church in its essence is mystical". See Pomazansky, *Orthodox Dogmatic Theology*, (Saint Herman of Alaska Brotherhood, 1997), 222-224.

<sup>2</sup> Letter CCXIV. 4.

<sup>3</sup> Letter CCXIV. 4.

<sup>4</sup> CE, II.2, PG 29:624AB. See this idea in Orphanos, *Salvation and Creation*, 76. See also Hom. 21 in Wagner, 502, (PG 31:560B).

this word because He brought us “through our bodily parents into existence from non-existence” and adopted us through His grace.<sup>5</sup> In Basil’s thought this statement is true not only for Christians but for all faithful people, even if they lived before Christ. Using the context of Job 1:18-22 as an example Basil ascribes the words of explanation to Job:

I was called a father for as long a time as He who made me wished it. He willed, in turn, to take from me the crown of offspring. I do not resist Him. May that which seems good to the Lord prevail. He is the Maker of my children; I am His instrument.<sup>6</sup>

Through such allusions to God’s Paternity St Basil shows the attitude of God toward humanity. The key phrase of this passage, “May that which seems good to the Lord prevail,” demonstrates his assurance in God’s providential activity and care toward His creation. According to St Basil, God is wise and “He metes out that which is profitable to His servants” and we should “only love the dispensations of His wisdom.”<sup>7</sup> In the last paragraph of the homily Basil explains that Job’s children who died are not completely dead but they “live on in the best part of their nature”: they have “gone before to await their father”. With an obvious joy St Basil declares that “all of them will stand about Job when the Judge of human life will gather together the universal Church.”<sup>8</sup> God is not only Creator of this world but He is the Father whose goal is to keep His children alive and provide for them a place where they will experience “the glory everlasting.”<sup>9</sup> This place, St Basil suggests, is the Church universal which welcomes all children of the Father.

If we look at the images which describe the involvement of God the Father in the life of the Church we will not be surprised to find that He is perceived by St Basil as the Father of the Church. In poetical language, Basil introduces the image of God as a loving parent in his homily *On Psalm XLIV*.<sup>10</sup> The titles that he ascribes to the Church are “the

---

<sup>5</sup> CE, II.23, PG 29:624B. The Greek reads: *δια των σωματικων γονεων εις το ειναι ημας εκ του μη οντος παραγαγων*. See also *Hom. 26.2*, DelCogliano, 198. “All are our relatives, all our brothers, all descendants of one father. If you seek your spiritual father, it is he who is in heaven.”

<sup>6</sup> *Hom. 21*, Wagner, 502. PG 31:560B.

<sup>7</sup> *Hom. 21*, Wagner, 504.

<sup>8</sup> *Hom. 21*, Wagner, 505.

<sup>9</sup> PG 31:564AB. *Hom. 21*, Wagner, 505.

<sup>10</sup> *Ps. XLIV*, PG 29:388A-413D. In English version of the Bible this is Psalm 45.

daughter of the King” and “the bride of Christ”.<sup>11</sup> These words show the implied logic of the homily: the Church is the bride of the Son and at the same time she is the daughter of the Father who adopted her through His love (διὰ της ἀγάπης).<sup>12</sup> Developing this daughter/bride analogy a little bit further St Basil comes to a logical conclusion that the Church is the Mother (ἡ μήτηρ) of all children of Christ.<sup>13</sup> At this point Basil introduces a change to the metaphor because previously the believers were presented as children of God the Father. However, this illustration can help us to understand essential aspects of Basil’s ecclesiology.

The significance of this motherhood imagery appears to be two-fold. In the first place, the identity of the Church is primarily determined by her relations to the Father and to Christ as her bridegroom, rather than by her relation to the believers who constitute the community. In Basil’s thought it is not just a human institution but a mystical entity that is united with the Father and the Son in a very special way. In the second place, the identity of a believer is connected with the non-biological birth which happens through the Mother Church.<sup>14</sup> From now on the believers are called “the sons of Christ’s bride”<sup>15</sup> (υἱοὶ τῆς

<sup>11</sup> Ps. XLIV, PG 29:412A. The Greek: της θυγατρὸς του βασιλέως and της Χριστου νύμφης.

<sup>12</sup> Ps. XLIV, PG 29:409A.

<sup>13</sup> Ps. XLIV, PG 29:413C. Traits of, and allusions to, the Church as the Mother, appear already in the works of other Church Fathers who lived before St Basil. It seems that he just followed the method of interpretation which was common in the church at that time. For example, Eusebius in his *Ecclesiastical History* calls the church “Virgin Mother” of believers when he describes in detail the sufferings of the Christians of Gaul during the persecutions around the year 177. See Eusebius of Caesarea, *Ecclesiastical History* (ed. and tr. by K. Lake, LCL, vol. I, Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1980), 429. Also Cyprian in his famous saying use the same imagery: “He can no longer have God for his Father who has not the Church for his mother; . . . he who gathereth elsewhere than in the Church scatters the Church of Christ.” See Cyprian, *On the Unity of the Church*, 423. See also Irenaeus, *Against Heresies III.24.1* in ANF (ed. A. Roberts and J. Donaldson, Vol.1, org. prin. 1885, repr. Grand Rapids: Eerdmans Publishing Company, 1981), 458 where he says that “where the Spirit of God is there is the Church and... those who do not partake of Him” are not nourished “into life from the mother’s breasts” implying the Church. See similar notion of Church’s motherhood in *Second Clement* in *The Apostolic Fathers: Greek Texts and English Translations*, tr. J. B. Lightfoot and J. R. Harmer, (2nd ed., ed. by Michael Holmes, Grand Rapids: Baker Books, 2004), 107-109; 121.

<sup>14</sup> Following the logic of the Eastern Church Fathers on this “motherhood” imagery John Zizioulas introduced a very good term “ecclesial hypostasis” which characterises the identity of a believer that he receives through this non-biological birth. On this issue see J.D. Zizioulas, *Being as Communion*, 56-57. See also *Letter CCXXVII* where St Basil is using similar analogy when he gives the advice: “Do not enter into a dispute with your Mother Church at Nicopolis.” He implies the local congregation to which the person belongs.

<sup>15</sup> Ps. XLIV, PG 29:413C.

*Χριστου νύμφης*) and “the sons of the Church” (*οἱ υἱοὶ τῆς Ἐκκλησίας*).<sup>16</sup> Although St Basil uses a masculine language in these particular phrases we can understand from the context of the Psalm that the daughters are included as well. It is especially true for the exegesis of the verse 14 which mentions virgin companions of “the bride.”<sup>17</sup>

St Basil declares that the Church is called by God and should forget “*her* people and *her* father’s house”<sup>18</sup> and instead she receives “the sons of the Gospel” (*οἱ υἱοὶ τοῦ Εὐαγγελίου*).<sup>19</sup> His interpretation of this phrase is quite important: it shows the role which the Church plays in salvation. There is an interesting nuance in Basil’s use of the verb *λαμβάνω*. The Church does not produce the children for God but she *receives* them as a gift from God on account of her obedience.<sup>20</sup> This reminds us of Basil’s analogy of the earthly parents who are only the instruments: God is the real Father of all people. However, the Church is entrusted with a great responsibility: to raise children of God and to guide them until they become mature. For this reason she feeds them as catechumens with milk then “weans” them through baptism and after that provides them “the solid food of dogmata.”<sup>21</sup> According to St Basil, the Church as a good Mother does her job properly because the deeds of her children are even more incredible than the deeds of Patriarchs.<sup>22</sup> Her children that are born “through Christ”<sup>23</sup> become “saints” (*οἱ ἅγιοι*) and “rulers” (*ἀρχόντες*)<sup>24</sup> of the earth.

<sup>16</sup> Ps. XLIV, PG 29:413B.

<sup>17</sup> See Ps. XLIV, PG 29:412D.

<sup>18</sup> Ps. XLIV, PG 29:408D. St Basil implies Gentile religions. In the original phrase of the Psalm the pronoun “your” is used instead of “her” and goes like “forget your people and your father’s house.”

<sup>19</sup> Ps. XLIV, PG 29:413B.

<sup>20</sup> Ps. XLIV, PG 29:413B. We have to mention that in his homily *Exhortation to Holy Baptism* St Basil does say that the Church goes through the “birth pain” (*ὠδινεν*) and “gives birth” (*ἀποκνήσθη*) to the Christians through the baptism but it does not contradict the fact that she gets these children from God. See PG 31:425A.

<sup>21</sup> EHB, PG 31:425A. The Greek reads: *ἀποαλακτίσασα... των λογων τῆς κατηχήσεως* and *τῆς στερεᾶς τῶν δογματῶν τροφῆς*. Probably, St Basil follows here the biblical metaphor of “milk” and “solid food” from 1Cor 3:3.

<sup>22</sup> Ps. XLIV, PG 29:413BC.

<sup>23</sup> Ps. XLIV, PG 29:413B.

<sup>24</sup> Ps. XLIV, PG 29:413C.

Following St Basil's logic we come to a conclusion that there are some conditions which the Church should fulfill in order to receive the children. She should forget the customs of her old house, which means Gentile culture, humbly accept "the Gospel teaching," and be obedient to God.<sup>25</sup> St Basil keeps pointing to these particular requirements in this homily because in his thought the idea of receiving the Gospel is connected with "abiding in the sound and unperturbed doctrine."<sup>26</sup> St Basil is probably concerned with the preservation of the Church's identity and unity in face of the heretical dissensions among believers. Obviously, there is a strong sense of oneness of the Church in this imagery: there is only one bride of Christ which should demonstrate the fidelity to the Gospel and become the Mother of believers. Using the vivid language of *Psalm XLIV* St Basil shows the authority of the Church with which she is endowed from God. The story ends with the picture of the Mother Church as the Queen appointing her children ("sons of the Gospel") as rulers to the different parts of the earth.<sup>27</sup> For these actions her name will be remembered through all generations and she will be confessed and praised among the nations.<sup>28</sup> St Basil clarifies this statement introducing one more metaphor: it is not the Church that will be worshiped by all people but Christ as "her face."<sup>29</sup> Therefore, God will be worshiped and glorified through the Church and her actions in history which become inseparable from the proclamation of the Gospel.

St Basil mentions again the motherhood of the Church in his homily *On the Feast of the Forty Martyrs*. He explains that the City of God (heavenly dimension of the Church) where these martyrs will live forever is the Heavenly Jerusalem and this city is the Mother of Paul and others like him.<sup>30</sup> Thereby, he implies that Heavenly Church is the Mother of all Christians who went through sufferings in this earthly life and kept their faith. In the

---

<sup>25</sup> *Ps. XLIV*, PG 29:409AB.

<sup>26</sup> See *Letter CCLI.4*.

<sup>27</sup> *Ps. XLIV*, PG 29:413C.

<sup>28</sup> *Ps. XLIV*, PG 29:413D.

<sup>29</sup> *Ps. XLIV*, PG 29:409C. Greek: τὸ πρόσωπον.

<sup>30</sup> *InSQM 2*, PG 31:509B.

same paragraph of this homily he repeats the idea that all these martyrs have a common Father who is God (*κοινὸς πατήρ ὁ Θεός*) and this fact makes them members of the same spiritual family – the Church. Just as in the case of the children of Job, Mother Church welcomes her children whom this world put under trials and murdered for their faithfulness to their Lord and Saviour.<sup>31</sup>

One more time St Basil employs the same metaphor of the Church as the Mother in his homily “*On Detachment from Worldly Goods*”<sup>32</sup> that was preached in reference to a fire which occurred in the near neighbourhood of the church on the previous evening. Upon the careful analysis of this event St Basil draws out two conclusions. First, the Church as “our common mother” (*ἡ κοινὴ μήτηρ*) fought together with the Saviour against the Devil and won the battle.<sup>33</sup> This means that one of the functions of the Church is the protection of her children from “the Foe and his engines of the war.”<sup>34</sup> According to St Basil, for this reason the Church was built by Christ as “the fold for His flock.” He believes that this kind of event can serve as “the memorials erected by the Saviour” which points to “His victory over the fury of the Devil.”<sup>35</sup> In Basil’s thinking, the fact that the Church “remained unharmed”<sup>36</sup> shows that she has a special place in the divine plan. Second, the Lord is always present in the Church and “He is at His post even now, in our midst.”<sup>37</sup> In this sense the power and the life of the Church completely depends on this divine presence and her connection to God. She is honoured and recognized as the Mother of all believers only when she has an intimate relationship with the Father of her children.

---

<sup>31</sup> *InSQM* 4, PG 31:512BC.

<sup>32</sup> *Hom. 21*, PG 31: 540CD-564AB.

<sup>33</sup> PG 31:556C. See also the translation *Hom. 21*, Wagner, 499.

<sup>34</sup> *Hom. 21*, Wagner, 499.

<sup>35</sup> *Hom. 21*, Wagner, 499.

<sup>36</sup> *Hom. 21*, Wagner, 500.

<sup>37</sup> *Hom. 21*, Wagner, 500.

## Metaphors for Christ and the Church

Throughout Basil's writings we can find different metaphors that describe the relationship between Christ and believers in the Church: a vine and the branches,<sup>38</sup> the bride and the Bridegroom,<sup>39</sup> the body and its member,<sup>40</sup> brothers [and sisters] in the family of God.<sup>41</sup> Among these metaphors there is one which occupies a prominent place in Basil's thought and was mentioned by him many times and on different occasions.<sup>42</sup> This is the well known biblical metaphor of the Church as the body of Christ.<sup>43</sup> Through this metaphor St Basil introduces us to fundamental ecclesiological principles. He believes that Christians should see their identity as bound up members of one body which God unites so that people may live worthy of Christ as their Head.<sup>44</sup> This is not so much about the things which people can accomplish or about some moral attainment but is about the relationships which believers can have with God, with each other and with the world.

It is very important to mention that when St Basil uses the metaphor of the body he does not mean only people from a local congregation or from several communities that are located near each other. He perceives the Church as a whole: "we all, the rest, as many as have believed, are the members of Christ."<sup>45</sup> And in another place he asks his readers: "For what could be more delightful than to behold all, who are separated by distances so vast, bound together by the union effected by love into one harmony of members in Christ's

---

<sup>38</sup> *Hex. V.6; The Morals LXXX.3*, 20, Clarke, 127, 128.

<sup>39</sup> *Ps. XLIV; The Morals LXXX.18*, Clarke, 128.

<sup>40</sup> *Letter LXX*. See also footnote 5.

<sup>41</sup> *LR*, Clarke, 167; *The Morals*, Clarke, 128.

<sup>42</sup> For example, *Letter LXX; Letter XCVII; Letter CCXLIII.1; Letter CCXXII; Letter CCLXVI.1; Ps. XLIV.5*, PG 29:397CD; *De Jud.*, PG 31:660A; *HS V.9; HS XXVI.61; The Morals LX*, Clarke, 117, 128; *LR*, Clarke, 164. Probably, St Basil followed the conviction, shared by other believers of his time which originates from Paul's teaching. As Kelly noticed, the conception of the mystical body of Christ "constitutes the core of the patristic notion of the Church and its most fruitful element" in the setting of Trinitarian or Christological argument. Kelly, *Early Christian Doctrines*, 403.

<sup>43</sup> Sometimes Basil uses the whole phrase "body of Christ" and even adds explanations and in some epistles he just employs the word "body" for a quick reference to the Church. See, for example, *Letter CCXXII, Letter XXII.3*. Koschorke argues that "body of Christ" is the central image of the Church in Basil's ecclesiology. See Koschorke, *Spuren der Alten Liebe*, 30.

<sup>44</sup> *The Morals LXXX.4*, Clarke, 102.

<sup>45</sup> *Ps. XLIV.5*, PG 29:397CD, 400A. The translation is from Richard Traver Smith, *St Basil the Great* (London: Wyman and Sons, 1879), 112.

body?”<sup>46</sup> Although in his letters St Basil often uses the plural form *αἱ ἐκκλησίαι* instead of the singular *ἡ ἐκκλησία* he still thinks of believers in these local congregations as member of only one Body of Christ.<sup>47</sup> St Basil clearly expresses this vision of the Church through the recalling of the past: “I thought that I had gone back to the good old times, when God’s Churches flourished, rooted in faith, united in love, all the members being in harmony, as though in one body.”<sup>48</sup> This “body” in Basil’s thought, is gathered throughout the ages,<sup>49</sup> covers different geographical locations and will be kept by God in eternity. In his homily on *Psalms XLIV* he explains: “The Church is the body of the Lord and He Himself is the Head of the Church... Therefore, the saying: ‘God hath blessed thee’; that is to say, He has filled thy members and thy body with blessings from Himself for eternity (*εἰς τὸν αἰῶνα*), that is to say, for time without end.”<sup>50</sup> Literally, he is saying that the period of time when God will be filling the body with His good things is endless (*εἰς τὸ ἀπέραντον*).<sup>51</sup> Once again we notice the eschatological perspective in Basil’s thought. From the quotation above we can understand that he applies this metaphor to both dimensions of the church: to the eschatological reality and to that which is still in process of realization. Here on the earth it is composed of those who are learning to live in harmony with one another and “in love of Christ, as members of a body.”<sup>52</sup> This is the condition on which they will be allowed to join the eternal dimension of the Church. Consequently, they may receive eternal life only by being united to their Head and to each

---

<sup>46</sup> Letter LXX.

<sup>47</sup> See for example, Letter CLVI, Letter CLXIV and Letter CCXLIII. St Basil uses the plural expression mostly in his letters when he talks about the local congregations and in other works he uses singular noun referring to the church.

<sup>48</sup> Letter CLXIV.

<sup>49</sup> We already mentioned in this dissertation that St Basil sees the Old Testament saints as part of the Church. When we discussed the image of the Church as the Mother we also noticed that Job’s children are included in the Church as well.

<sup>50</sup> Ps. XLIV.5, Way, 284. PG 29:397CD, 400A. See alternative translation in Smith, *St Basil the Great*, 112.

<sup>51</sup> Ps. XLIV.5, PG 29:400A.

<sup>52</sup> *The Morals*, Clarke, 117.



other. Otherwise, St Basil believes, their destiny may be completely opposite because “those who are divided and at variance with one another deserve to perish.”<sup>53</sup>

Most of the time when St Basil uses the phrase “the body of Christ” he demonstrates his care for the unity of the Church and for ecclesiastical obedience.<sup>54</sup> He is concerned that the earthly part of the body is struggling and cannot attain its perfection in face of dissensions and divisions. St Basil declares:

...there should be no schisms in the body, but that the members should have the same care for one another, being moved, no doubt, by the one indwelling Spirit. Why has it been thus arranged? I think that such order and discipline may be preserved far more in the Church of God, to which it has been said: “Ye are the body of Christ and severally members thereof,” since the one and only true head, that is Christ, clearly holds and unites each to other with a view to the production of harmony.<sup>55</sup>

This organic metaphor of the body points to the important aspect of the corporate life of believers. Christians are called to share in the life of the Church as members while Christ as their Head acts as the unifying principle. Therefore, the harmony and the unity in the church appear as the mark of Christ's presence among them. St Basil strongly believes that “where no harmony is preserved, no bound of peace kept, no meekness in the spirit treasured, but divisions and strife and jealousy are found – it would be very presumptuous to call such men members of Christ or say they are ruled by Him.”<sup>56</sup> Only cooperation and love among the believers shows that the Lord is present with them.

In his writings St Basil draws out his picture of a healthy church. As any living organism it is supposed to grow and develop. On one hand, it “having nourishment ministered” from its Head “increaseth with the increase of God.”<sup>57</sup> On the other hand, “the whole body fitly joined together and compacted by that which every joint supplieth, according to the effectual working in the measure of every part, maketh increase of the

---

<sup>53</sup> *The Morals*, Clarke, 117.

<sup>54</sup> This can be true for all other images which we mentioned in the beginning because unity of the Church is the theme that had been the main focal point of Basil's attention and consideration throughout his life time.

<sup>55</sup> *De Jud.*, Clarke, 80.

<sup>56</sup> *De Jud.*, Clarke, 80.

<sup>57</sup> *HS V.9*. The modern translation of this phrase is “grows as God causes it to grow.” Original quotation is from Col. 2.19 which St Basil is interpreting in this passage.

body.”<sup>58</sup> This means that God and the Church work together when each part of the body does work and it grows and builds itself up in love. Although there is a distinction between clergy and laity each member contributes to the common activity of the “body” and at the same time each member receives help from others. Basil places clergy “at the top” because they are supposed to exercise their “own watchful forethought for every portion of the body underneath” so that “no part of the body is deprived of due care.”<sup>59</sup> And he asks those who are entrusted with the authority of the “care of souls”, “to keep each other and all together,” and to “cherish them as beloved children.”<sup>60</sup> St Basil perceives the structure of the Church as hierarchical: however, he insists that all members of Christ's body should be equal in honour and that nobody should be neglected due to his/her small “gifts.”

That since the gifts of the Spirit are different, and neither is one able to receive all nor all the same gifts, each should abide with sobriety and gratitude in the gift given him, and all should be harmonious with one another in the love of Christ, as members of a body. So who is inferior in gifts should not despair of himself in comparison with him that excels, no should the greater despise the less.<sup>61</sup>

In Basil's view, each member of the “body” is precious to the Lord. Following the biblical text from 1 Cor. 12.25 he reminds his readers that “whether one member suffereth, all the members suffer with it: or one member is honoured, all members rejoice with it.”<sup>62</sup> Even when the believer commits sins and does not obey authorities in the Church, and must be excluded from the community, he or she still “should be grieved over as a limb cut from the body.”<sup>63</sup> St Basil thinks that it is a painful loss for the body as well as for the person who caused the problems. Both for this person and for the community this loss has eternal consequences: he/she is excluded not only from the local congregation or the

---

<sup>58</sup> *HS V.9*. The original quotation is from Eph. 4.15,16 which is interpreted by St Basil.

<sup>59</sup> *Letter CCXXII*.

<sup>60</sup> *Letter CCXXII*.

<sup>61</sup> *The Morals LX*, Clarke, 117.

<sup>62</sup> *De Jud.*, Clarke, 80.

<sup>63</sup> *Letter XXII.3*. About the believers who have sinned Basil says that instead of the members of Christ they become “members of a harlot.” See *Ps. XXVIII*, Way, 197.

earthly Church but from the heavenly Kingdom. This person is deprived of their citizenship in this “new Jerusalem” and he/she is lost forever.

The statement above about the grief of the lost “limb” shows that St Basil, as many of the Church Fathers before him, believes that the true Christian has no life apart from Christ's body which is the Church because she/he is a member of that body.<sup>64</sup> For this reason St Basil explains that life in solitude does not bring any benefits. On the contrary, Christians who live alone and do not “serve the common welfare in a way well-pleasing to God” cannot preserve “their subjection” to Christ.<sup>65</sup> They have “the idle and fruitless life”<sup>66</sup> because they do not exercise their gifts which in the life of community become “the common property of their fellows.”<sup>67</sup> “When brethren live together in community, St Basil writes, then there is a stadium for athletic exercise, a method for development, a combined course of training and practice in the Lord's commands.”<sup>68</sup> In Basil's opinion, those who constitute the Church are all interdependent and they attain their union to God not as isolated individuals but as the living body. Once incorporated into community the believers became a part of life-giving “body” that maintains the mystical union with Christ as its Head. Therefore, to leave this body or break the connection with it means to cut themselves from the source of life. As branches are not able to live without a vine and limbs without a body so believers cannot live apart from God and from His Church. This life as members is a part of the divine plan which God has for fallen humanity.<sup>69</sup> The Lord Himself, Basil posits, “has deigned to style the universal Church of God His body,” and He “has moreover granted to all of us to live in intimate association with one another.”<sup>70</sup> He provided the opportunity for all people to join this dynamic and living organism “that

---

<sup>64</sup> Ignatius of Antioch, *To Philadelphians* 3.2; Irenaeus, *Against Heresies* III. XXIV.1; Cyprian, *On the Unity of the Church* 6. See this idea in Colm O'Grady, *The Church in the Theology of Karl Barth* (London: Geoffrey Chapman, 1970), 245.

<sup>65</sup> LR, Clarke, 164

<sup>66</sup> LR, Clarke, 164

<sup>67</sup> LR, Clarke, 164

<sup>68</sup> LR. 7. The translation is from Bettenson, *The Later Christian Fathers*, 95.

<sup>69</sup> Ps. XLV, PG 29:421CD, 424A. The ultimate goal of God is to collect all people into a “city”, “heavenly Jerusalem.”

<sup>70</sup> Letter CCXLIII. See also HS XXVI.61.

in the goodly order of *their* Church *they* may keep *their* strength and the foundation of *their* faith in Christ; that God's name may be glorified and the good gift of love increase and abound."<sup>71</sup> Through the Church God unites humanity to Himself and to each other, forming of them the mystical entity whose ultimate goal is eternal life together and "the glory of God."<sup>72</sup>

As far as other Christological metaphors are concerned, Basil uses them to convey similar ideas about the relation between Christ and the Church. He repeats his arguments and discusses oneness of the Church in connection with Christ as the source of its unity. As the preacher of love par excellence, Basil emphasizes that this union should be "effected by love."<sup>73</sup> Although he does not deal with those metaphors as extensively as he does with the metaphor of the body of Christ, nevertheless, Basil adds some important details to the previous picture of the Church.

In his homily *On Psalm XLIV* St Basil describes the Church as "the one perfect dove of Christ"<sup>74</sup> which receives the believers in "the right side of Christ's country"<sup>75</sup> because they are known for their "good deeds" (*ἐπ' ἔργοις ἀγαθοῖς*). At the same time she separates them from the "evil" people.<sup>76</sup> Basil goes on to posit that the Church, like a shepherd (*ποιμὴν*) is able to make a distinction between "the lambs and the goats."<sup>77</sup> It is obviously an allusion to the Last Judgment from Matt. 25:31 when all the nations will be gathered before Christ and He will separate people from one another. Using this metaphor, St Basil expresses the conviction that the Church has the authority to make this kind of judgment as well. He continues and illustrates this point of view with some more metaphors. In the next sentence the Church is described as "the queen" and as "the soul" (*ψυχή*) who is engaged to her Bridegroom the Word. He stresses the idea that the Church

---

<sup>71</sup> Letter CCXXII.

<sup>72</sup> LR VII. See Bettenson, *The Later Christian Fathers*, 95.

<sup>73</sup> Letter LXX.

<sup>74</sup> Ps. XLIV, Way, 291. The Greek reads: *μία ἐστὶ τελεία του Χριστου περιστερά*.

<sup>75</sup> Ps. XLIV, PG 29:408C. The Greek: *εἰς τὴν δεξιὰν χώραν*.

<sup>76</sup> Ps. XLIV, PG 29:408C.

<sup>77</sup> Ps. XLIV, PG 29:408C. See Way, 291.

is “not ruled by sin.”<sup>78</sup> On the contrary, she is “a partaker” of the Kingdom of Christ and she stays at the right hand of the Saviour.<sup>79</sup> In Eastern culture the place at the right hand is for the most respected and honoured persons. This reminds us that according to the biblical testimony Christ Himself sits at the right hand of His Father.<sup>80</sup> Probably, when Basil presents the Church next to Christ, he follows this biblical metaphor. One more time, he makes clear that the Church is defined not by its relation to the existing gathering of believers but from the perspective of the new creation of God. She is called the “perfect dove” and she is presented as “not ruled by sin” because of who she will be in Christ's Kingdom. In Basil's thought the identity of the Church is completely defined by her eschatological state. Using the same metaphor of “queen” from *Psalms XLIV* Basil develops this idea in his *Homily VIII* and applies it to the believers. St Basil asserts that everything that was said about the Church can be said about “every soul” because the Church as a whole (τό σύνστημα) consists of individuals.<sup>81</sup> In this sense the identity of a believer is closely connected with the Church and can be defined only through his/her participation in the heavenly dimension. St Basil persuades his listeners to think about the present and the future remembering that they will be rewarded according to their deserts by the righteous Judge.<sup>82</sup>

## Metaphors for the Spirit and the Church

Although the discussion of the Person of the Holy Spirit occupies a considerable place in Basil's teaching we cannot find many separate metaphors which describe His work in the Church.<sup>83</sup> However, the Spirit is present in Christological metaphors where He plays

<sup>78</sup> *Ps. XLIV*, PG 29:408C. The Greek: μὴ βασιλευμένη ὑπὸ τῆς ἁμαρτίας.

<sup>79</sup> *Ps. XLIV*, PG 29:408C.

<sup>80</sup> See, for example, *Ephesians* 1:20.

<sup>81</sup> *Hom. 8*, PG 31:328B.

<sup>82</sup> *Hom. 8*, PG 31: 328C.

<sup>83</sup> In the homily on *Ps. XLIV* the Holy Spirit is called “the Scribe” and “the anointing of joy” and in treatise *On the Holy Spirit* in chapter XXVI He is compared to a “form” and to a “place” with sanctified people. Unfortunately, all these metaphors do not play such prominent role in Basil's thought as the Christological images.

an important role. He indwells<sup>84</sup> the “Body” and unites its members with each other.<sup>85</sup> Through participation and the sanctifying work of the Spirit an assembly of people becomes the Church.<sup>86</sup> As the giver and dispenser of life<sup>87</sup> He supports and shapes the entire life of the “Body.”

The Holy Spirit who is the origin of sanctification<sup>88</sup> brings believers to perfection and makes them “spiritual by fellowship with Himself.”<sup>89</sup> In Basil's view, sanctification is one of the Spirit's main functions because “nothing is sanctified but only by the presence of the Spirit.”<sup>90</sup> He illustrates this idea through a metaphor when he compares the Holy Spirit to “Form.”<sup>91</sup> He writes that the Spirit is analogous to Form inasmuch as He “perfects rational beings, completing their excellence” that at the end they become “conformed to the image of the Son of God.”<sup>92</sup> Through this work of the Spirit “the minds of all people who form the Church as the body of Christ will be renewed” and this means that “the whole Church will be renewed.”<sup>93</sup> St Basil emphasizes that this means the renewal of the mind through the Spirit (*διὰ τοῦ ἁγίου Πνεύματος*) in everyone who complete the body of the Church of Christ.<sup>94</sup> He writes more on this matter in his treatise *On the Holy Spirit* where he maintains that the Spirit “illuminates” the minds of believers, as when they “worship in the Spirit” they have their minds “working in the light.”<sup>95</sup>

This idea of “renewal” or transformation of the believer's inner being was mentioned once more in Basil's homily *On Psalm XXXII*. Following 1 Cor. 12:3 Basil affirms that this is the Spirit who enables people to confess that “Jesus is the Lord” and no one can

---

<sup>84</sup> *De Jud.*, Clarke, 80.

<sup>85</sup> *HS XXVI.61.*

<sup>86</sup> *HS XV.36.* See also *Ps. XXXII*, PG 29:333C. In this homily Basil asserts that “everything is sanctified only through the Spirit.”

<sup>87</sup> *HS IX.22, XV.35f.*

<sup>88</sup> *HS IX.22.*

<sup>89</sup> *HS IX.23.*

<sup>90</sup> *Ps. XXXII.4*, PG 29:333C. The Greek reads: οὐδὲν γὰρ ἀγιάζεται, εἰ μὴ τῇ παρουσίᾳ τοῦ Πνεύματος. See also *HS XVI.38.*

<sup>91</sup> *HS XXVI.61.*

<sup>92</sup> *HS XXVI.61.*

<sup>93</sup> *Ps. XXIX*, PG 29:308A.

<sup>94</sup> *Ps. XXIX*, PG 29:308A. Interestingly enough that Basil uses a little bit different expression this time – it is “the body of the Church of Christ” (το σῶμα τῆς Ἐκκλησίας τοῦ Χριστοῦ).

<sup>95</sup> *HS XXVI.64.* The translation is from George Lewis.

worship Him if he does not have “the right spirit” (τὸ εὐθεὶς πνεῦμα) which “was renewed” inside him.<sup>96</sup> St Basil implies that the Holy Spirit “renews” the believers and creates this “right” attitude in them when they receive the ability to confess Christ as their Lord and Saviour. Commenting on verse three of the same psalm Basil continues the discussion of this topic. He asserts that when the believers “sing a new song” which is the teaching of the Lord (του Κυρίου διδασκαλίας) in “the renewed spirit” then they “destroy” the old person in themselves and become a new one “day after day.”<sup>97</sup> This “new song” is about the incarnation of the Lord, about the mystery of His resurrection, and about “the regeneration and renewal of the whole world” (την ἀναγέννησιν καὶ ἀνανέωσιν του παντός κόσμου) which “became old under sin.”<sup>98</sup> In this sentence we can notice an idea of the transformation which is available for the whole world through the work of the Spirit in the Church. It reminds us that as the Spirit was involved in the creation of the world so He still plays a leading role in the re-creation of this world in order to bring it to the new state, or to shape it to a new “form”.

St Basil also uses an interesting metaphor for the Holy Spirit in his homily *On Psalm XLIV* where He is presented as the Scribe (Γραμματεὺς) because He writes on believer's hearts,<sup>99</sup> and also because He is wise and teaches everybody.<sup>100</sup> Basil also mentions in another homily the role of the Spirit in establishing the truth.<sup>101</sup> He calls all people to come together and listen to the preaching (κηρύγμα) as the Intercessor or Helper (Παράκλητος), and as the Spirit of truth. Through the prophets and apostles He assembles

---

<sup>96</sup> Ps. XXXII, PG 29:325B.

<sup>97</sup> Ps. XXXII, PG 29:325B.

<sup>98</sup> Ps. XXXII, PG 29:325C. Further insight into Basil's understanding of renewal can be found in his *Homily 9*. Interpreting the words from Psalm 50:12 “Create in me a clean heart” St Basil explains that it does not mean making “something new but renew what has grown old through evils.” Then he adds that the word “make” means not that something was brought out of non-being but that beings are transformed and that the meaning of improvement has been assigned to the term “creation.” See *Homily Explaining that God is not the Cause of Evil* in Nonna Verna Harrison, *On the Human Condition* (Crestwood: St Vladimir's Seminary, 2005), 69.

<sup>99</sup> Ps. XLIV, PG 29:396AB.

<sup>100</sup> Ps. XLIV, PG 29:396A.

<sup>101</sup> Ps. XLVIII, PG 29:433A

everyone who was saved all over the earth until the end of the world (*οἰκουμένη*).<sup>102</sup> Basil is convinced that “the advice” which is given by the Holy Spirit lead the believers to “the good end” which is “the blessed end/goal of the human life.”<sup>103</sup>

St Basil develops this idea of the blessed life a little bit further in his homily *On Psalm LXI*. Implying the eschatological events, He talks about the Spirit of Promise. In Basil's opinion every believer is a servant of a great King [God] and he/she is called by Him to be a member of His household.<sup>104</sup> This means that Christians should be proud of who they are and of the King whom they serve. Those who received (*λαβῶν*) the Spirit of Promise are sealed by Him as the accepted children of God.<sup>105</sup>

St Basil introduces one more metaphor for the Holy Spirit in the treatise *On the Holy Spirit* where He is called the Place of those who are sanctified (*χώρα τῶν ἁγιαζομένων*).<sup>106</sup> In Basil's opinion this metaphor means that only in the Spirit as in a special “place” can we have a “vision” of God. Interpreting the story of Moses he comes to a conclusion that the Spirit is “the special and peculiar place of true worship.”<sup>107</sup> The believers are supposed to bring their “sacrifice of praise” and “spiritual” offerings “in spirit and in truth.” Then the question arises: “in what place do we offer it?” Basil goes on and explains that the Spirit should be perceived as the presence of God in the believer's life.

It follows that the Spirit is verily the place of the saints and the saint is the proper place for the Spirit, offering himself as he does for the indwelling of God, and called God's Temple.<sup>108</sup>

St Basil thinks that believers can be called “saints” or “sanctified” because of the presence of the Spirit in them. In this sense the Church is also a place where the Spirit is

<sup>102</sup> Ps. XLVIII, PG 29:433A

<sup>103</sup> Ps. XLV, PG 29:416A. The Greek reads: τὸ μακάριον τέλος τῆς ἀνθρωπίνης ζωῆς.

<sup>104</sup> Ps. LXI, PG 477AB.

<sup>105</sup> Ps. LXI, PG 477B.

<sup>106</sup> HS XXVI.62.

<sup>107</sup> HS XXVI.62.

<sup>108</sup> HS XXVI.62f.



present inside the Christians and among them. As the body of Christ and as the place where the Spirit dwells the Church plays a special role in the plan of God for humanity.

## **Trinitarian Persons and other metaphors of the Church**

In Basil's writings there are also metaphors of the Church where all three Persons of the Trinity are present at the same time: the city of God, the family of God, and the house of God. The first metaphor was already discussed in detail in the previous chapter and it refers mostly to the heavenly Church<sup>109</sup> where believers live together having fellowship with the Triune God and with each other. Therefore, here we will look at two other metaphors which Basil mentions in his works.

### ***Family of God***

An allusion to God's family can be found in many of Basil's works. Whenever he calls his listeners and readers "brethren"<sup>110</sup> it points to their relation as members of one family of God. This metaphor reflects the communal character of the Church: it is fellowship of God's children or communion of siblings. Commenting on *Psalm XLVIII* Basil emphasizes that Christ Himself considered mankind as His brethren.

Though we were not His brethren, but were enemies through wicked works, yet He, being not man alone, but God, after He Himself has given us freedom, calls us brethren. He who redeemed us was, if we consider His nature, neither our brother nor man; but if we regard His gracious condescension to us, He calls us brethren and descends to humanity.<sup>111</sup>

St Basil asserts that through Christ people "might receive the adoption" into God's family<sup>112</sup> which means that by faith they might become sons and daughters of God. As we have seen in the earlier discussion this adoption happens in the Mother Church where they

---

<sup>109</sup> See the metaphors of the city in *Ps. XLV*, PG 29:421CD. St Basil believes that this metaphor can be applied to the earthly Church as well. See *Ps. XLV*, PG 29:424BD. See also *InSQM*, PG 31:509B.

<sup>110</sup> Fedwick is convinced that the term ἀδελφότης is "indiscriminately applied by Basil to both the ascetic community and the local church." See Fedwick, *The Church*, 23. On ascetic community he refers to *Letters CCXXIII.5* and *CCLVII.2* and as applied to the church to *Letters CXXXIII*, *CXXXV.2*, *CCXXVI.2*, and *CCLV*.

<sup>111</sup> *Ps. XLVIII.4*, PG 29:441B. Translation is from Smith, *St Basil the Great*, 109-110.

<sup>112</sup> *Letter CCLXI.1f.*

are supposed to grow and to learn the teaching of the family which is the Gospel.<sup>113</sup> They are also expected to behave according to the family rules in order to become rulers of different parts of the earth. In this sense that family has an international character and includes many nations but at the same time they constitute one people of God. As Basil writes, “All believers in Christ are one people; all Christ's people, although He is hailed from many regions, are one Church.”<sup>114</sup>

St Basil also reminds his readers that as children of God they should be “formed after the likeness of God, according to the measure granted to men.”<sup>115</sup> This means that as Christians they should keep this family resemblance in order to show to which family they belong and who is their real Father. Obviously, this is not about the physical appearance but about their spiritual condition and behaviour. Basil picks up this topic in his homily *On Psalm XLV* and makes clear since God is “the Sun of righteousness” the believers will become “children of light” (τέκνα φωτός).<sup>116</sup> In his letters St Basil refers to non-believers as to “children of disobedience.”<sup>117</sup> He believes that their real Father is God<sup>118</sup> but they do not want to admit this fact in their lives. However, they still have a potential to become children of obedience and to join the family because the goal of God is to embrace all His children, the whole of humanity.

One of the best examples of the connection between this family metaphor and all the Trinitarian Persons can be found in St Basil's homily *On the Feast of the Forty Martyrs*.<sup>119</sup> He starts from the statement that though these martyrs do not have a common homeland they all belong to the Heavenly Jerusalem which is the City of God.<sup>120</sup> Using the same logic Basil comes to a conclusion that though the human families of these martyrs are

---

<sup>113</sup> See the sub-chapter 4.1 of this thesis.

<sup>114</sup> *Letter CLXI.1.*

<sup>115</sup> *The Morals*, Clarke, 128

<sup>116</sup> *Ps. XLV.5*, PG 29:424D.

<sup>117</sup> *Letter XLVI, Letter CCX*. St Basil uses the expression from the epistle to Ephesians 2.2.

<sup>118</sup> *CE II.23*, PG 29:624AB.

<sup>119</sup> *InSQM 2-4*, PG 31:509BC, 512BC.

<sup>120</sup> *InSQM 2*, PG 31:509B. The Greek: ἡ πόλις τοῦ Θεοῦ.

different their spiritual family are the same because God is their common Father.<sup>121</sup> He continues the explanation and asserts that all of them are brothers not as born from the same parents but as adopted by the Spirit and they are joined together through like-minded love.<sup>122</sup> Then Basil mentions another Person of the Trinity, Christ, in the fourth paragraph of this homily when he finishes the story of their unjust trial. According to the existing rules, prisoners had to pronounce their names before public execution. As Basil testifies, each of them in his turn said: “I am Christian” (*Χριστιανός εἰμι*).<sup>123</sup> In order to show their faithfulness to this spiritual family everyone of the martyrs rejected the name given to him at birth and called himself according to the name of their common Saviour (*τοῦ κοινοῦ Σωτῆρος*).<sup>124</sup> Basil emphasizes that all of them did not say their family names but named themselves Christians.<sup>125</sup> In this homily we notice three important features of Basil's ecclesiology which also can be found in other works: first, God is the Father of all humans and He prepared a special place for those who believe – the Church (here on earth and there in Heaven); second, the Spirit provides a way for them to receive “the adoption of sons”;<sup>126</sup> third, Christ as common Saviour of all people introduces them into a new family with a new name, Christians, which becomes their true identity.

It is very important for Basil to affirm that we are saved not as individuals but as members of God's family. He believes that Christians have to re-evaluate all their “physical relationships and human friendships” in accordance with the “strictness of the gospel of salvation.”<sup>127</sup> Any of these relations which conflict with the gospel should be renounced and then the believer receives new parents and new brethren instead of the old ones. As Basil writes:

---

<sup>121</sup> *InSQM* 2, PG 31:509BC. The Greek: *κοινὸς πατὴρ ὁ Θεός*.

<sup>122</sup> *InSQM* 2, PG 31:509C. The Greek: *τῆς υἰοθεσίας τοῦ Πνεύματος*.

<sup>123</sup> *InSQM*, PG 31: 512B.

<sup>124</sup> *InSQM*, PG 31: 512C.

<sup>125</sup> *InSQM*, PG 31: 512C.

<sup>126</sup> The same idea can be found in *HS* XV.36. See also *Ps. LXI*, PG 477B where St Basil asserts that believers are sealed by the Spirit and accepted as children of God.

<sup>127</sup> *LR*, Clarke, 166.

He renounces also all affection of this world which can hinder the aim of godliness. Such a man will consider his true parents those who in Christ Jesus begat him through the Gospel; as his brethren, those who received the same spirit of adoption.<sup>128</sup>

St Basil believes that when “love of parents or relations” is in “opposition to the commands of the Lord” the words of Luke 14:26 about hatred toward one’s parents can be applied.<sup>129</sup> In this sense the Church, as a new Christian family, should become more important for the believer than the real physical family into which he was born. If there is a conflict between these two the priority goes to the Church where the believer will begin to learn a new style of life.

In the family analogy as in many others St Basil stresses the importance of proper relationships in the community: “That it is impossible for them to be counted worthy of the Kingdom of heaven who do not imitate in their dealings with one another the equality observed by children among themselves.”<sup>130</sup> Although this may refer to Matt. 18.3 it still can be applied to the members of one family, the Church. Believers are expected to communicate as children and they have to remember that their common Parent equally loves them all. In this sense the relationships with other children of God reflect the depth and the quality of our knowledge of God. St Basil also persuades the leaders of the church to become “faithful stewards” and as “fathers and nurses of their own children, in the great affection of their love in Christ willingly to render to them not only the gospel of God but even their own souls.”<sup>131</sup> They should share responsibilities and privileges of the older brethren of the family which include support and help to “younger” children. This points to the practical side of their ministry: they should be concerned about the physical and spiritual needs of those who are trusted by God under their care. Following Christ willingly they are expected to sacrifice their own souls for the sake of their brothers and

---

<sup>128</sup> LR, Clarke, 167. See also this idea in *CBap I*, Wagner, 346.

<sup>129</sup> LR, Clarke, 167. Similar notion can found in Basil's homily *On Psalm XLIV* where he asserts that “the celestial and blessed love” to God makes the believers forget their relatives and friends. See *Ps. XLI*, Way, 287.

<sup>130</sup> *The Morals XLV.I*, Clarke, 112.

<sup>131</sup> *The Morals LXXX.18*, Clarke, 129.

sisters. And it is not just a figure of speech but a reality which they might face. In his

*Letter CCXL* Basil reminds the presbyters of Nicopolis about their ancestors:

You are children of confessors; you are children of martyrs; you have resisted sin unto blood. Use, each one of you, the examples of those near and dear to you to make you brave for true religion's sake.<sup>132</sup>

These words determine their identity and their position within society. In this sense, in becoming a member of the church, a believer receives more than he/she, probably, realises. Christians inherit the family history and the patterns of behaviour. There are some expectations which are imposed on them by the family to which they belong. As children of faithful martyrs and confessors who died for their faith they are expected to follow in the steps of those who are dear to them and to repeat the same acts if they have to. They have the examples which were set before them: first, by the oldest Brother, Christ, then by the older generation of the family, and then by their parents. Now this is their turn to represent the family and to keep the identity.

### ***House of God***

Another remarkable metaphor of the Church where St Basil uses all three Trinitarian Persons is the house of God and a courtyard. The main idea behind this analogy connected not so much with the place but with the presence of God in the Church and the understanding of true worship to God. Commenting on the second verse of *Psalms XXVIII* Basil explains what he means by this metaphor: the house of the Lord (*οἶκος Κυρίου*) is the Church of the living God.<sup>133</sup> He affirms that there is only one holy courtyard (or house) of God (*αὐλή τοῦ Θεοῦ*) where believers can worship Him.<sup>134</sup> Previously it was the Jewish synagogue but after they had sinned against Christ their house (*ἐπαυλὶς*) became empty.<sup>135</sup> This is a very important remark which tells us about Basil's

---

<sup>132</sup> *Letter CCXL.*

<sup>133</sup> *Ps. XXVIII*, PG 29:288C.

<sup>134</sup> *Ps. XXVIII*, PG 29:288A.

<sup>135</sup> *Ps. XXVIII*, PG 29:288B. In the same paragraph of this homily Basil implies that Jews lost the right to be in God's court because now they are outside of it. Similar idea can be found in Basil's homily *On*

understanding of the Church. Jewish people still have their synagogues as the place of their worship but according to St Basil, God is no longer present there. Therefore, Basil concludes, the Church as the holy house of the Lord is the place where the true worship happens.<sup>136</sup> In this sense a gathering of people in a place can be called the Church only if the presence of God is there.

In the same homily St Basil makes another interesting statement about the believers who are present at the Church. Many, he says, may have an outward appearance of being praying people but they are not really present at the courtyard (*αὐλή*) because their minds are occupied with worthless things and their thoughts are moving around.<sup>137</sup>

Consequently, they are “neither worshipping the Lord, nor present at the holy house.”<sup>138</sup>

Thereby, Basil comes to a conclusion that to be in the church means to have a special condition of the mind when fellowship with the Triune God becomes the present experience. In Basil's thought the whole Trinity is involved in ecclesial activity. He develops this idea in his homily *On Psalm XXIX* where he asserts that the metaphor of the house (*οἶκος*) implies the Church which is built by Christ.<sup>139</sup> Recalling 1 Timothy 3.15 Basil repeats that “God's house” (*οἶκος Θεοῦ*) is “the Church of the living God”

(*Ἐκκλησία Θεοῦ ζῶντος*). Furthermore he explains that “through the Holy Spirit” the

---

*Psalm XLVIII* when he says that “Israel which followed the flesh was called a fool” and “the houses” of such fools are “their sepulchres forever.” Then he adds that “he who is dead through sins does not dwell in a house.” See *Ps. XLVIII*, Way, 322-323. It is worth to mention that the same images, the Church as the house of the Lord and believer's lives as a houses built on the rock, were used by Origen in his commentaries to affirm that the OT prophesies about the chosen People of God “prefigure Christ and anticipate their fulfilment in his Church.” This was done in order to prevent the Jews to use the messianic texts in their own interest. See Emilianos Timiadis, “The Trinitarian Structure of the Church and Its Authority” in *Theological Dialogue Between Orthodox & Reformed Churches* (ed. by T. F. Torrance, Edinburgh: Scottish Academic Press, 1985), 121-158.

<sup>136</sup> *Ps. XXVIII*, PG 29:288A.

<sup>137</sup> *Ps. XXVIII*, PG 29:288B.

<sup>138</sup> *Ps. XXVIII*, PG 29:288C. The Greek reads: οὐτε προσκυνεῖ νῶ Κυρίῳ, οὐτε ἐν τῇ αὐλῇ ἐστι τῇ ἁγίᾳ.

<sup>139</sup> *Ps. XXIX*, PG 29:308A. The Greek: Ἡ τάχα οἶκον νοῆσαι προσήκει τὴν οἰκοδομουμένην ὑπὸ Χριστοῦ Ἐκκλησίαν. See also *HS VII.16*: through Christ and by Christ the grace of God is effected for us that we have access to his “household.” Similar notion can be found in his *Hom. 4* where Basil explains that through “the blood of the Only-begotten” (*τῷ αἵματι τοῦ Μονογενοῦς*) people were called back to become again the members of God's household. *Hom. 4*, PG 31: 224A.

process of renovation takes place<sup>140</sup> which actually means the renewal of the mind (τὴν ἡνακαίνωσιν τοῦ νοῦς) in everyone who constitutes “the body of Christ.”<sup>141</sup> Although Basil talks about a house or courtyard he does not perceive the Church so much as a place but as a gathering of people<sup>142</sup> where two very important conditions are met: First, God is present among these people; second, the minds of believers, which means their attitude and intentions, are transformed and renovated because of the activity of the Holy Spirit in “the body of Christ.”

St Basil returns to the topic of the renewal of human nature by God one more time in his homily *On Psalm LXI*. In this case human beings are considered as the buildings which are under God's reconstruction.<sup>143</sup> St Basil reminds his listeners that, on one hand, the nature of human beings (ἡ φύσις τοῦ ἀνθρώπου) is under sin and therefore “it should be destroyed”.<sup>144</sup> On the other hand, Basil continues, after the renewal made by the One who has built it in the beginning, it may become secure, indestructible, and steadfast.<sup>145</sup> Quoting the verse from 1 Cor. 3.9 he repeats that humans are “God's field and God's building.”<sup>146</sup> Although this building has been damaged by the enemy (ὁ ἐχθρός) our Creator (ὁ Δημιουργός) repairs all the destruction. Therefore, Basil concludes, the destruction was necessary because of sin but “great is the resurrection through immortality.”<sup>147</sup> The Church at the end will consist of this kind of “renewed buildings” which were fixed by God as the true Owner of His field. Using the verses from Eph. 2.20-22 Basil confirms this idea in *The Morals*, saying we are “builders of God's temple,

<sup>140</sup> Ps. XXIX, PG 29:308A. The Greek reads: διὰ τοῦ ἁγίου Πνεύματος.

<sup>141</sup> Ps. XXIX, PG 29:308A.

<sup>142</sup> The word “church” in the meaning of a group of people was also used by St Basil in his homily *On Forty Martyrs*. Even these forty believers he calls “the church of martyrs” and explains furthermore that God is present among them referring to Matt. 18.20. See *InsQM* 7, PG 31:521C. The same idea can be found in his seventh homily on *Hexaemeron* 7.6 where Basil explains that his goal is “to make all *he* says turn to the edification of the Church.” Obviously, he means people and not the building or place by the word “church.”

<sup>143</sup> Ps. LXI, PG 29: 473C.

<sup>144</sup> Ps. LXI.3, PG 29:472C The Greek: λυθῆναι δὲ πάντως αὐτὴν χρῆ.

<sup>145</sup> Ps. LXI.3, PG 29:472C.

<sup>146</sup> Ps. LXI.3, PG 29:472C The Greek: Θεοῦ γεώργιον, φησὶ, Θεοῦ οἰκοδομὴ ἔστε.

<sup>147</sup> Ps. LXI.3, PG 29:472C The Greek reads: ἡ ἀνάστασις διὰ τὴν ἀθανασίαν.

sharing the soul of each one so that he fits harmoniously on to the foundation of the apostles and prophets.”<sup>148</sup> God builds His Church through repairing every little part of His temple, every human soul which constitutes this house of God.

St Basil develops this metaphor of the Church as a house in his *Homily 3* where he explains how this “great house” functions. He speaks of “a great variety of pursuits” in this house which is “the Church of the living God.”<sup>149</sup> Although St Basil calls people hunters, travellers, architects, builders, farmers, shepherds, athletes, and soldiers he implies different spiritual tasks for those “who are united in labour for Christ's Gospel.”<sup>150</sup> Accordingly, the “architect should lay the firm foundation of faith which is Jesus Christ and let the builder look to his materials.” The same way “a hunter” has to take good care that his “prey does not elude” him, so that having captured them with the word of truth the hunter “may bring back to the Saviour those who have been wild and savage by iniquity.”<sup>151</sup> “A shepherd” is in charge of “pastoral duties” and he is supposed “to bring back that which is lost, to bind up that which was broken, to heal that which is diseased.”<sup>152</sup> Also “a farmer” has his own responsibilities in this common “house” of the Lord. He “digs around unfruitful fig trees and administers remedies that will provide fecundity.”<sup>153</sup> And a soldier should “labour with the gospel, war a good warfare against spirit of wickedness.”<sup>154</sup> All of them are doing the work which has to be done in that “house” in order that the Church can exist and function properly. St Basil believes that every Christian can fulfil at least one of these ministries: “Every one of us, indeed, who is instructed in the Holy Scripture, is the administrator of some one of those gifts which, according to the Gospel, have been apportioned to us.”<sup>155</sup> As in everyday life people have to work and maintain their own households so they are expected to carry out their duties in

---

<sup>148</sup> *The Morals LXXX*, Clarke, 129.

<sup>149</sup> *Hom. 3*, PG 31: 205BD-208AB

<sup>150</sup> *Hom. 3*, Wagner, 437-438.

<sup>151</sup> *Hom. 3*, Wagner, 437.

<sup>152</sup> *Hom. 3*, Wagner, 437.

<sup>153</sup> *Hom. 3*, Wagner, 437.

<sup>154</sup> *Hom. 3*, Wagner, 437f-438.

<sup>155</sup> *Hom. 3*, Wagner, 436f.



God's house, the Church. Their talents and skills could be different but for everybody God prepared a gift with which the believer can serve to the Lord and to others.

## **Conclusion to chapter 4**

The vivid metaphors and images which St Basil uses throughout his works enable us to see his concept of the Church in a new light and at the same time to keep the Trinitarian perspective. The picture which emerges from the analysis of these metaphors clarifies the dominant themes in Basil's ecclesiology.

Several metaphors such as motherhood of the Church, or belonging to the body of Christ, or incorporation into the family of God clearly reveal to us Basil's idea that the Christians cannot be imagined as separated from the Church because there is no salvation outside this special community. At the same time the Fatherhood of God gives hope to all people that they are equally included in His plan of salvation.

Almost all of these metaphors emphasize a sense of the corporate nature of the Christian life: the household and its keepers; the brotherhood or the family; the body and its members; the building under reconstruction. These words describe not something static but dynamic and alive: both God and the community are at work. The Church as the active part of these metaphors is supposed to grow, to develop and to become complete. It always goes through the process of transformation and change in order to become the perfect body, the loving family, or, to bring the good fruits of faithful service. In Basil's thought, all these metaphors include at least one Person of the Trinity that reminds believers that they are never left alone. As the loving Father and the eldest Brother God leads his people toward eschatological reunion. Being present in the Church in the Person of the Holy Spirit He creates a new social reality where believers have to learn the new way of life.

## Chapter 5

### INWARD LIFE OF THE CHURCH: EDUCATION AND TRANSFORMATION THROUGH PRAISES AND PRAYERS TO GOD THE TRINITY

After dealing with the general concept of the Church in the previous chapters the exploration of Basil's ideas of sacraments and worship will lead us into his understanding of the inward life of the Church. In his works he pays considerable attention to liturgy in the Christian community, especially in regard to corporate learning and transformation. We will look from Basil's point of view at different acts and rituals which all Christians are supposed to go through individually and together with other believers.

#### Liturgy and Trinitarian teaching

A universal tradition of Eastern Churches attributes to St Basil the so-called *Liturgy of St Basil* which is still employed in Churches of Byzantine rites throughout the year.<sup>1</sup> Although many scholars suggest that as time went on this liturgy underwent some changes most of them agree that the core of it actually goes back to St Basil.<sup>2</sup> In addition to this famous work there are different original texts which bear witness to Basil's liturgical practice and theology: his *Letters*, *Homilies*, *Monastic Rules* and especially his treatise *On the Holy Spirit* which has its origin in liturgical changes.<sup>3</sup> All his ideas about the liturgy, especially several of his beautiful and profound prayers, can become for us one more

---

<sup>1</sup> An influence of this Liturgy is illustrated by its adoption by the patriarchal see of Constantinople, and by its spread over the whole East, as well as to Sicily and Italy. Later in the ninth century it was translated into Slavonic by St Cyril and St Methodius. See Quasten, *Patrology*, 226-227.

<sup>2</sup> For discussions of the authenticity of "The Liturgy of St Basil the Great" see a very good article of George S. Bebis, "Introduction to Liturgical Theology of St Basil the Great," *The Greek Orthodox Theological Review*, (1997): 273-285. See also Cyprian Robert Hutcheon, "Sacrifice of Praise: A Theological Analysis of the Pre-Sanctus of the Byzantine Anaphora of St Basil," *St Vladimir's Theological Quarterly* 45:1 (2001): 3-23. As M. I. Orlov said in his book, the problem with the text of liturgy was that it was "always alive" and "grew" throughout the centuries. See M. I. Orlov, *Liturgiya Svyatogo Vasiliya Velikogo*, (1<sup>st</sup> critical edition, St Petersburg: Sinodalnaya Tipografiya, 1909), 1.

<sup>3</sup> St Basil introduced the new doxology in order to support his views against those who refused to rank the Holy Spirit with the Father and the Son and in this treatise he provides the arguments for this change.

source for a study of Basil's approach to the life of the Church because in his writings doctrine, ethics, and worship are inextricably woven.

In order to understand better Basil's liturgical ideas we have to go back to the Christological and Pneumatological disputes and their influence on the liturgy. The fourth century is marked by divisions within the Eastern part of the Church.<sup>4</sup> The rise of Arianism touched the most important question of the Church's life – the person of Jesus Christ, Son of God, the Lord and Saviour. Thereby, these disputes led to other questions such as professions of faith and liturgical prayers. Later on when the person and the divinity of the Holy Spirit were brought to discussion in the Church it became a matter of vital importance for believers to understand how to pray or what kind of words to use. Should the Son be honoured equally with the Father? What should be the position of the Spirit in the prayer? How do liturgy and prayers have to be organized? One of the problems was that Arians appealed to the traditional doxology, customary in that time in the Church: “Glory to the Father through the Son in the Holy Spirit.” The words “through the Son” in Arian theology pointed to His lower stage than that of the Father. This interpretation of the doxology brought the “orthodox” theology of the Church to the adaptation of a new doxology which could not be misunderstood or wrongly interpreted.<sup>5</sup> St Basil started using a new liturgical formula beside the old one: Glory “to the Father *with* (μετὰ) the Son *together with* (σὺν) the Holy Spirit.” He was convinced that the old doxology was not erroneous but in the new one Basil wanted to emphasize the equality of the Persons inside the Trinity and to support the “orthodox” views in the Trinitarian controversies in the Church.<sup>6</sup> In this sense this doxology was the logical consequence of his Trinitarian theology. Defending his Trinitarian views St Basil employed both Scripture

---

<sup>4</sup> St Basil describes this situation in his work *HS* XXX.78.

<sup>5</sup> See more on the history of liturgy and its development in Josef A. Jungmann S.J., *The Early Liturgy: to the Time of Gregory the Great* (5<sup>th</sup> ed., London: Darton, Longman & Todd), 1980, 188-198.

<sup>6</sup> This conclusion can be made from the content of his book *On the Holy Spirit*. See, for example, his statement about both doxologies in *On the Holy Spirit* XXVII.68: “not that they are opposed in mutual antagonism, but that each contributes its own meaning to true religion.”

and “unwritten mysteries of the Church” which were “delivered” “in a mystery by the tradition of the apostles”.<sup>7</sup> Thereby, St Basil used previous liturgical practices of the Church in order to support his theological views and at the same time to justify the use of the new doxology which from his perspective reflected the proper Trinitarian ideas.

This whole story of the development of a new doxology brings us to a conclusion that in Basil's thought the liturgy was not merely a time of prayer and worship. It was also the time of religious education when the congregation was able to learn proper theological statements and beliefs. A notable feature of *Basil's Liturgy* is its clearly Trinitarian expressions. It consists of the great hymns of praise where the words of glory and honour to the Persons of Trinity are repeatedly recited.<sup>8</sup> Also we can notice that the whole service is organized as a corporate action where all who are present have to participate.

One of the best examples of Basil's liturgical prayers which show his theological vision of the Trinity is his Eucharistic prayer before the consecration of the gifts.<sup>9</sup> Different poetic devices and techniques were used there in order to convey to people in the Church the mystery of Trinitarian relationships. Beginning with the address to the Father and through the personal praises to each Trinitarian hypostasis, *St Basil's Liturgy* leads his hearers to the important theological point that God is

...the Master of all things, the Lord of heaven and earth, and of every creature visible and invisible... the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ the great God and Saviour... by Whom the Holy Ghost was disclosed: the Spirit of truth, the grace of adoption... the

---

<sup>7</sup> HS XXVII.66. As Florovsky explains, the phrase “unwritten mysteries” means not something “in secret” but the form of rites and liturgical usage. Most of the times the term “mysteries” refers to the rites of Baptism and Eucharist. See G. Florovsky, *Bible, Church, Tradition: An Eastern Orthodox View* (Belmont: Nordland Publishing Company, 1972), 86. More information on the idea of 'written' and 'unwritten' tradition see in Emmanuel Amand De Mendieta, *The “Unwritten” and “Secret” Apostolic Traditions in the Theological Thought of St. Basil of Caesarea* (London: Oliver and Boyd), 1965. For another opinion about the tradition in St Basil see the article by R. P. C. Hanson, “Basil's Doctrine of Tradition in Relation to the Holy Spirit,” *Vigiliae Christianae*, 22 (1968): 241-255.

<sup>8</sup> See J. M. Neale and R.F. Littledale, *The Liturgies of SS Mark, James, Clement, Chrysostom, and Basil, and the Church of Malabar* (London: Spottiswoode), 1869. See also *The Orthodox Liturgy: being the Divine Liturgy of S. John Chrysostom and S. Basil the Great* (London: SPCK), 1939. See similar idea in Behr, *The Nicene Faith*, 317.

<sup>9</sup> Basil's exposition of the Trinitarian theology in this liturgy is compatible with the theological vision that we can find in his other writings which modern critical scholars consider as authentic. For example, in his famous work *On the Holy Spirit*. See the textual correspondences of Basil's anaphora with *On the Holy Spirit* in the article by Hutcheon, “Sacrifice of Praise,” 17-18.

fount of sanctification, by whom every reasonable and spiritual creature empowered serveth Thee and sends up to Thee the everlasting doxology.<sup>10</sup>

By providing to the attendees in the Church this kind of liturgical text St Basil hopes that through the celebration and worship they will become edified and will be able to withstand heretical attacks. That understanding of the liturgy finds expression in his fourth homily *On Hexaemeron* when St Basil, describing the divine act of creation, compares the beauty of the ocean with the worship and praises which a community offers to God. According to Basil, the proper liturgy should not be shadowed by heresy or troubled with any kind of ill-intentioned claims. Only the worship of believers who are guided by Christ and remain faithful to Him will be approved by the Lord.

If the Ocean is good and worthy of praise before God, how much more beautiful is the assembly of a Church like this, where the voices of men, of children, and of women, arise in our prayers to God mingling and resounding like the waves which beat upon the shore. This Church also enjoys a profound calm, and malicious spirits cannot trouble it with the breath of heresy. Deserve, then, the approbation of the Lord by remaining faithful to such good guidance, in our Lord Jesus Christ, to whom be glory and power for ever and ever.<sup>11</sup>

Similar understanding of interconnectedness between the knowledge of God the Trinity and worship is demonstrated by St Basil when he discusses the divinity of the Holy Spirit. He is convinced that God bestows this knowledge of Himself only on true worshippers, implying that they believe in God the Son and the Spirit. Thereby, the words “to worship in spirit and in truth” are interpreted by Basil almost literally where truth means the orthodox teaching about God.

For it is not said through the Spirit, but by the Spirit, and "God is a spirit, and they that worship Him must worship Him in spirit and in truth," as it is written "in thy light shall we see light," namely by the illumination of the Spirit, "the true light which lighteth every man that cometh into the world." It results that in Himself He shows the glory of the Only begotten, and on true worshippers He in Himself bestows the knowledge of God.<sup>12</sup>

---

<sup>10</sup> The Greek text is the canonical one from Nomikos M. Vaporis, ed., *The Divine Liturgy of Our Fathers Among the Saints Basil the Great* (Brookline, MA: Holy Cross Orthodox Press, 1988), 23-25. The English translation is from J. M. Neale and R.F. Littledale, *The Liturgies of SS Mark, James, Clement, Chrysostom, and Basil, and the Church of Malabar*, 129-130.

<sup>11</sup> *The Hex. IV. 7*, PG 29:93C.

<sup>12</sup> *HS XVIII.47*. St Basil returns to this discussion in *HS XXVI.64*.

In his *Letter CCXXXV* Basil explains the idea of the knowledge of God: “Knowledge is manifold - it involves perception of our Creator, recognition of His wonderful works, observance of His commandments and intimate communion with Him.”<sup>13</sup> In Basil's thought this “intimate communion” implies the act of worship and later in this epistle he affirms: “The statement that God shall be known from the mercy seat means that He will be known to His worshippers. And the Lord knows them that are His, means that on account of their good works He receives them into intimate communion with Him”.<sup>14</sup> Therefore, Basil's position is that the proper understanding of God is a fundamental point for a believer's communication with God and vice versa: proper worship leads to the right knowledge of God.<sup>15</sup> St Basil is anxious to persuade his readers that those who reject the knowledge of the Spirit's divinity cannot offer true worship to God. He writes: “Such an one has no part in the true worship. For it is not possible to worship the Son but by the Holy Spirit, nor is it possible to call upon the Father but by the Spirit of adoption.”<sup>16</sup> Basil elaborates this discussion in chapter XXVI of his treatise *On the Holy Spirit* and he emphasizes one more time that “even in our worship the Holy Spirit is inseparable from the Father and the Son. If you remain outside the Spirit you will not be able even to worship at all.”<sup>17</sup> This idea is so important to St Basil that in one of his letters he uses the term “true worshippers” for those believers who worship the Holy Spirit as God.<sup>18</sup> Therefore, in Basil's opinion, the believer is defined as a Christian by his worship to God: the Father, Son and Holy Spirit. For this reason St Basil wants people in the Church to pay close attention to prayers which they repeat during worship or to other texts which they

---

<sup>13</sup> *Letter CCXXXV.3.*

<sup>14</sup> *Letter CCXXXV.3.*

<sup>15</sup> We may clarify a little bit more what does it mean for St Basil “the knowledge of God”. As Basil emphasizes in his *Letter CCXXXIV.1* : “The word to know has many meanings. We say that we know the greatness of God, His power, His wisdom, His goodness, His providence over us, and the justness of His judgment; but not His very essence.” He goes on further and explains the connection between the knowledge and worship. *Letter CCXXXIV.3.* See more on this topic in Constantine G. Bonis, “Problem concerning faith and knowledge, or reason and revelation, as expounded in Letters of St Basil the Great to Amphilochius of Iconium,” *Greek Orthodox Theological Review*, 5 (1959): 27-44.

<sup>16</sup> *HS XI.27*, the translation is from George Lewis.

<sup>17</sup> *HS XXVI.64.*

<sup>18</sup> *Letter L.*

listen to such as the creed or doxologies. He insists that their minds should be completely devoted to God when they are present in the church.

The time which you lend to God is not lost: he will return it to you with large interest... Deliver your heart, then, from the cares of this life and give close heed to my words. Of what avail will it be to you if you are here in the body, and your heart is anxious about your earthly treasure?<sup>19</sup>

Similar ideas about acquiring the proper understanding of God through worship can be found in other works of St Basil. Commenting on the words, “In the temple of God all shall speak his glory,” he reminds his readers that “wretched men, who leave their homes and run to the temple, as to enrich themselves somewhat, do not lend their ears to the word of God... and even become a hindrance to the others.”<sup>20</sup> Therefore, they are in danger and can be condemned together with “those blaspheming the name of God.” For this purpose St Basil appeals to Christians to use their reason and their ability to think in order to glorify God and win the glory to themselves.

Let the tongue sing, let the mind interpret the meaning of what has been said, that you may sing with your spirit, that you may sing likewise with your mind. Not at all is God in need of glory, but He wishes you to be worthy of winning glory.<sup>21</sup>

St Basil pays extra attention to the educational function of Psalms which people sing together during worship in his homily *On Psalm I*.<sup>22</sup> Admitting in the beginning that it is difficult for the human race to learn about virtue or the “upright life” Basil explains the role of the Holy Spirit in this process of education in the Church. When the beautiful melody is used then the teaching and the word of God can be received by believers much easier and without resistance.

The delight of melody He [the Spirit] mingled with the doctrines (τοις δόγμασιν)<sup>23</sup> so that by the pleasantness and softness of the sound heard we might

---

<sup>19</sup> *Hex. III.1*. St Basil insists that the teaching in the Church is the words of the Lord Himself with which He addresses people when the message is proclaimed “through mouths of His servants.” *Homily 8.8*, Schroeder, *On Social Justice*, 86.

<sup>20</sup> *Ps. XXVIII*, PG 29: 301C.Way, 209-210.

<sup>21</sup> *Ps. XXVIII*, PG 29:304A.Way, 210. Basil believes that not to have the knowledge of God is equal to “the death of soul.” See *Hom. 13*, PG 31:423C.

<sup>22</sup> This also reflects the liturgical practice of Scripture readings from the Psalms.

<sup>23</sup> We have to mention that in the Basilian sense the term “*dogmata*” was not yet a term with “a strict and exact connotation.” See Florovsky, *Bible, Church, Tradition: An Eastern Orthodox View*, 86. It “mainly comprises the liturgical and sacramental prayers and customs, and the implied theological

receive without perceiving it the benefit of the words... Therefore, He devised for us these harmonious melodies of the psalms, that they who are children in age or, even those who are youthful in disposition might to all appearances chant but, in reality, become trained in soul...

...the wise intention of the teacher who contrived that while we were singing we should at the same time learn something useful; by this means, too, the teaching are in a certain way impressed more deeply on our mind. Even a forceful lesson does not always endure, but what enters the mind with joy and pleasure somehow becomes more firmly impressed upon it.<sup>24</sup>

In this sense worship could become one more tool which God uses in order to train his children for the life according to the Gospel and to guide them into the right direction. This also includes the knowledge of God which He wants to reveal to His people and to the world. St Basil is convinced that through the Psalms even an ignorant person can spread the Gospel all over the place where he lives.

For, never has any one of the many indifferent persons gone away easily holding in mind either an apostolic or prophetic message, but they do chant the words of the psalms, even in the home, and they spread them around in the market place.<sup>25</sup>

Therefore, we can come to the idea that the liturgy is developed in a way that participants are able to receive the important information. Through repetitive pattern they have the opportunity to memorize some ideas and doctrines. Afterwards, they can share this information with other people. St Basil gives a whole list of “good things” which people can learn from Psalms:

Therein is perfect theology (ἐνὶ θεολογία τελεία), a prediction of the coming of Christ in the flesh, a threat of judgment, a hope of resurrection, a fear of punishment, promises of glory, an unveiling of mysteries; all things, as if in some great public treasure, are stored up in the Book of Psalms.<sup>26</sup>

---

doctrines.” See De Mendieta, *The “Unwritten” and “Secret” Apostolic Traditions in the Theological Thought of St. Basil of Caesarea*, 40. See also De Mendieta, “The Pair KHPYTMA and ΔΟΓΜΑ in the Theological Thought of St. Basil of Caesarea,” *Journal of Theological Studies*, new series 16 (1965): 129-42.

<sup>24</sup> Ps. I, PG 29:212B. Way, 152. PG 29:213A. Way, 153. In addition to this quotation about the usage of “harmonious melodies of the psalms” we have to mention that St Basil was also interested in ecclesiastical music. Similarly, as he was attacked for using the new doxology so he was accused of liturgical innovations for using a form of music that previously was unheard of in the church. See *Letter CCVII.2-3*. On this issue see also Peter Karavites, “Saint Basil and Hymnology,” *The Greek Orthodox Theological Review*, 37 (1992) 203-214. And see also James Alan Waddell, “Identifying Authorities and Pastoral Practice in the Early Church. Two case studies: Basil of Caesarea and Ephrem of Syria”, *Concordia Journal*, (2005) 1:48-59.

<sup>25</sup> Ps. I, Way, 152.

<sup>26</sup> Ps. I, Way, 153. PG 29:213B.



One more function of psalms, which Basil mentioned in this homily, is their ability to “form the friendship, unite those separated, conciliate those at enmity.”<sup>27</sup> Basil is strongly convinced that people in the Church cannot still consider each other as an enemy when they “utter the same prayer to God.” Therefore the participation in liturgical singing, “psalmody,” brings about “choral singing, a bond, as it were, toward unity, and joining the people into a harmonious union of one choir.”<sup>28</sup> Through offering up the praises together the believers are brought to a condition when the psalm becomes “the voice of the Church.”<sup>29</sup> Excellent descriptions of such unity in worship can be found in Basil's *Letter CCVII.3* where he shares his experience of the vigil service:

Among us the people go at night to the house of prayer, and, in distress, affliction, and continual tears, making confession to God, at last rise from their prayers and begin to sing psalms. And now, divided into two parts, they sing antiphonally with one another, thus at once confirming their study of the Gospels, and at the same time producing for themselves a heedful temper and a heart free from distraction. Afterwards they again commit the prelude of the strain to one, and the rest take it up; and so after passing the night in various psalmody, praying at intervals as the day begins to dawn, all together, as with one voice and one heart, raise the psalm of confession to the Lord, each forming for himself his own expressions of penitence.<sup>30</sup>

Although St Basil discusses a lot the educational function of psalms and prayers it appears that he is concerned not only about this purpose of the liturgy. As we mentioned earlier,<sup>31</sup> St Basil places the emphasis on the believer's relationships with the living God. He believes that God Himself is always present in the Church among His people.<sup>32</sup> This means that during the worship the believers communicate in their prayers with God who is not distant but the One who is actively involved in this liturgy. God does not stay away from his people but He pays close attention to every need of the believers present in the community. St Basil is convinced that the time of liturgy gives the believer the

---

<sup>27</sup> *Ps. I*, Way, 152. PG 29:212CD.

<sup>28</sup> *Ps. I*, Way, 152. PG 29:212CD.

<sup>29</sup> *Ps. I*, Way, 153. PG 29:213A.

<sup>30</sup> *Letter CCVII.3*.

<sup>31</sup> See the previous discussion of relation between the knowledge and “intimate communion with God” in this chapter. See also the discussion of the image “house of God” in sub-chapter 4.4 of this thesis.

<sup>32</sup> See Basil's words about God's presence in the Church in *Hom. 21*: “He is at His post even now, in our midst”. The translation is from Way, 500. See the same idea that God “sees the affections of those entering” and “the prayer of each is manifested” to Him in *Ps. XXVIII*, PG 29:301C. Way, 209.

opportunity to show his/her faithfulness and thankfulness to God and also to become a blessing or a hindrance to others in the Church when they receive the teaching.

The earthly liturgy can also serve as an image of the worship in heaven where people and angels will join together in the common praise of their Creator and Redeemer.<sup>33</sup> The liturgy in the Church is a foretaste of the Kingdom that awaits the Christians.<sup>34</sup> In this sense the future of the person present at the liturgy depends on his attitude toward God: whether he glorifies God and builds the relationships with Him through the prayer and worship or ignores Him.<sup>35</sup> The same way it depends on his attitude toward his fellow worshippers: whether he joins them in unison or serves as a stumbling block for their sincere prayers.

Prayer is an important part of the liturgy and the Christian life in general. As St Basil admits in one of his letters, "I know that communion in prayer brings great gain."<sup>36</sup> According to St Basil these liturgical prayers are organized in a way that they are supposed to remind the community as a whole about their common "old country" where they came from, about their common Saviour, and their common future destiny after the resurrection.

Thus we all look to the East at our prayers, but few of us know that we are seeking our own old country, Paradise, which God planted in Eden in the East. We pray standing, on the first day of the week, but we do not all know the reason. On the day of the resurrection (or "standing again" Greek. *anastasis*) we remind ourselves of the grace given to us by standing at prayer, not only because we rose with Christ, and are bound to "seek those things which are above," but because the day seems to us to be in some sense an image of the age which we expect.<sup>37</sup>

---

<sup>33</sup> See *LR*, Clarke, 149; and *Ps. XLV.4*, PG 29:424A. In his *Letter II.2*. Basil wrote about the experience of devoted worship: "What state can be more blessed than to imitate on earth the choruses of angels?"

<sup>34</sup> As Basil noted, "On the day of the resurrection we remind ourselves of the grace given to us by standing at prayer... because the day seems to us to be in some sense an image of the age which we expect." *HS XXVII.66*.

<sup>35</sup> See this idea in *Letter CCXXI* where following the Bible, Basil asserts that "Christ's worshippers" will be honoured and "be made famous and glorious by Him before all" because this is the destiny of those who honour God.

<sup>36</sup> *Letter CL.2*. See more about the prayer in *The Morals LVI* in Clarke, 115-116.

<sup>37</sup> *HS XXVII.66*. "The day of resurrection" means Sunday in this context.

As part of liturgy these prayers and practices related to them, unite the Church in its action as a single whole and lead the people to the understanding of who they are and where they are going. St Basil noted that this “upright attitude of prayer” makes their minds “to dwell no longer in the present but in the future.” “Moreover, - Basil goes on, - every time we fall upon our knees and rise from off them we show by the very deed that by our sin we fell down to earth, and by the loving kindness of our Creator were called back to heaven.”<sup>38</sup> In some sense these corporate actions and prayers during the liturgical service help the believers to develop a certain understanding of the Church as the one and indivisible entity which experiences the presence of God and fulfils His plan. At the same time the believers are able to learn the foundational principles of the Church's faith which, according to St Basil, is the heritage from the apostles. Repeated throughout the service the affirmative movements and words draw people's attention to the important theological statements and ideas, in order to encourage them to remain faithful to their common goal in times of doubt and heretical attacks.

## **Baptism – entering the Church**

In many of his works when St Basil discusses the rite of baptism he provides his readers with the arguments that the foundation of Christian baptism is Trinitarian.<sup>39</sup> Since he writes during the continuing Christological and Pneumatological struggles it is understandable that he feels the need to defend the Trinitarian doctrine of the Church. However, in addition in the passages concerning baptism Basil mentions other important ideas which reflect his understanding of the Church and her role in the life of believers.

---

<sup>38</sup> HS XXVII.66.

<sup>39</sup> See his treatise *On the Holy Spirit*, chapters X, XII, XV, XVI, XXVI, XXVIII. See also *Exhortation to Holy Baptism*, PG 31:423-444; *De Fide* in Clarke, 96; *Letter CLIX.2*; see about baptism of heretics and schismatics in *Letter CLXXXVIII* and *Letter CXCIX.XX*.

Baptism is the rite whereby a believer becomes the member of the Church. For St Basil it is not a mere official procedure or a physical washing but “the mystery”<sup>40</sup> through which the person is initiated into the community of those who received the new life. In Basil's words, baptism is “the beginning of life,” and “the day of regeneration the first of days,” the day in which “the utterance uttered in the grace of adoption was the most honourable of all.”<sup>41</sup> This is the day when the believer enters not only the community of people whom he or she, probably knew before the rite, but this person is introduced into relationship with God the Trinity who makes this rite legitimate: “the God who gave, the Son who received, and the Spirit who is the unction.”<sup>42</sup> St Basil emphasizes this idea in his homily *Exhortation to Holy Baptism* where he uses the analogy of human friendship. In order to have good relationships with people we have to do what is pleasing to them. In order to enter fellowship with God we have to accept baptism.<sup>43</sup> In this way the rite of baptism can be considered as twofold: it is performed in the Church by people and by God and, therefore, includes both human and divine activity at the same time. St Basil believes that people are regenerated through God's grace given in baptism and their salvation is “established through the Father and the Son and the Holy Ghost.”<sup>44</sup> Therewith the Church administers the rite and the Church is responsible for the fulfilment of all the requirements in order to help people become Christians.<sup>45</sup>

Whence is it that we are Christians? Through our faith, would be the universal answer. And in what way are we saved? Plainly because we were regenerated through

---

<sup>40</sup> HS XXVII.66. From the context we can understand that St Basil uses this word “mystery” with the meaning “the sacrament” but not something unknown. There is a mystical notion in it which includes God's action and God's grace but the main meaning of the word “mystery” is the rite through which the believer has to go in order to join the Church. Interestingly enough, the Orthodox Church still uses this word for the sacraments. This is the official language and the official term of the contemporary Orthodox scholars. See Michael Pomazansky, *Orthodox Dogmatic Theology*, 255-307.

<sup>41</sup> HS X.26.

<sup>42</sup> HS XII.28.

<sup>43</sup> EHB, PG 31:433C.

<sup>44</sup> HS X.26. St Basil also believes that after baptism the human “soul” becomes “suitable henceforward as a dwelling place of God in the Spirit.” What is more, “God is sitting in the soul which shines from its washing, as if He making it a throne for Himself.” See Ps. XXVIII.8, Way, 210-211.

<sup>45</sup> Interesting, that in the early church the rite of baptism was “essentially corporate, presided over by bishop, assisted by his clergy, and with the faithful involved.” See J. D. C. Fisher, “Baptism: 1. Patristic” in *A New Dictionary of Liturgy and Worship*, (5<sup>th</sup> ed. edited by J. G. Davis, London: Butler & Tanner, 1996), 56.

the grace given in our baptism. How else could we be? And after recognizing that this salvation is established through the Father and the Son and the Holy Ghost, shall we fling away "that form of doctrine" which we received? Would it not rather be ground for great groaning if we are found now further off from our salvation "than when we first believed," and deny now what we then received? Whether a man has departed this life without baptism, or has received a baptism lacking in some of the requirements of the tradition, his loss is equal.<sup>46</sup>

According to Basil, if the rite of baptism performed in the church lacks "in some of the requirements of the tradition" then it is considered equal to not having baptism at all. St Basil thinks that salvation of the person depends on the tradition which was kept in the community of faith: whether it was delivered without mistake or some important customs were rejected. In the second case, he asserts that the rejection leads to the injury of "the Gospel in its very vitals" when it becomes "a mere phrase and nothing more."<sup>47</sup> Therefore, the role of the Church is to keep the traditions and the proper teaching in order to help people obtain their salvation and eternal life.

As the preacher who consistently reminds his listeners about the importance of education and the knowledge of God, St Basil emphasizes that this is the Church who calls people together through her "high preaching" (*ύψηλῳ κηρύγματι*) and teaches the catechumens with "milk" which is "the words of instructions"<sup>48</sup> in order to prepare them for baptism. In the Church they become the disciples of the Lord before they are "accounted worthy of holy Baptism."<sup>49</sup> Later on after the rite is performed, it is the Church again who feeds them with "the solid food of dogmata."<sup>50</sup> In this case baptism serves as

---

<sup>46</sup> HS X.26.

<sup>47</sup> HS XXVII.66. Most of these important customs which people might reject St Basil mentioned in this passage from *On the Holy Spirit* when he discusses the "unwritten traditions" of the Church except the Trinitarian formula which is mentioned many times in other passages of this treatise. Concerning the rite and prayers of the administration of baptism he describes more than seven actions: a) the sign of the cross on catechumens; b) the renouncement of Satan and his angels; c) the blessing of baptismal water; d) the blessing of the oil of chrism; e) the blessing of the catechumen who is to be baptised and his anointing with oil; f) the baptismal formula in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit; g) the triple complete immersion in the baptismal water. More on this subject in De Mendieta, *The "Unwritten" and "Secret" Apostolic Traditions in the Theological Thought of St. Basil of Caesarea*, 60-61.

<sup>48</sup> EHB, PG 31:425A.

<sup>49</sup> CBap I, Wagner, 339. Teaching the disciples of the Lord is one of the important ideas in Basil. For him "a disciple... is one who comes to the Lord for the purpose of following Him, that is, to hear His words, to believe in Him and obey Him as Master, King, Physician, and Teacher of truth, in the hope of gaining eternal life." CBap I, Wagner, 340-341.

<sup>50</sup> EHB, PG 31:425A.

the crucial moment when people become “enlightened” and they obtain the ability “to contemplate God”<sup>51</sup> and to receive the knowledge of God in the Church. Once again we see the cooperation of God-Church activity in baptism. The Church invites people through the preaching and provides the instructions and God through the Holy Spirit changes, regenerates and enlightens those who are baptized in order to prepare them for the new portion of teaching which they receive in the Church. As St Basil explains:

...in baptism two ends were proposed; on the one hand, the destroying of the body of sin, that it may never bear fruit unto death; on the other hand, our living unto the Spirit, and having our fruit in holiness; the water receiving the body as in a tomb figures death, while the Spirit pours in the quickening power, renewing our souls from the deadness of sin unto their original life. This then is what it is to be born again of water and of the Spirit, the being made dead being effected in the water, while our life is wrought in us through the Spirit. In three immersions, then, and with three invocations, the great mystery of baptism is performed, to the end that the type of death may be fully figured, and that by the tradition of the divine knowledge the baptized may have their souls enlightened.<sup>52</sup>

Also through the “mystery” of baptism people are allowed to receive this special teaching of “unwritten tradition” which they lacked before. Now the community of believers accepts the baptized person as one of them and shares the knowledge which was kept in secret.<sup>53</sup> St Basil clarifies that the Church guarded this information from the beginning in silence because “what is bruited abroad randomly among the common folk is no mystery at all.” He continues the explanation: “This is the reason for our tradition of unwritten precepts and practices, that the knowledge of our dogmas may not become neglected and contemned by the multitude through familiarity.”<sup>54</sup> In other words, Basil thinks that there is a necessity of preserving the sanctity of the Christian mysteries and the Church is the authority which can protect it and keep it for only those who belong to her.

---

<sup>51</sup> *EHB*, PG 31:423C. Actually, in this homily St Basil says that one who is not baptised is not enlightened (*πεφώτισται*) and is not able to perceive or see God.

<sup>52</sup> *HS XV.35*.

<sup>53</sup> Historians and scholars usually call this “secret” information the *disciplina arcani*. These were certain practices and formulas used during the rite of Baptism and Eucharist. There were some things or words that had to be kept secret from all non-baptized, the heathen and the catechumens. During the service they had to leave the church after the lesson, before the celebration of Eucharist or before the actual baptismal rite took place. See Josef A. Jungmann, S.J., *The Early Liturgy: to the Time of Gregory the Great*, (London: Darton, Longman & Todd, 1959), 159.

<sup>54</sup> *HS XXVII.66*.

In his homily *Exhortation to Holy Baptism* St Basil uses several illustrations with the language of “belonging” to some group of people in order to show the importance of Church membership and the connection between the rites of this earthly community and eternal life in the Heavenly Kingdom. This means that through the baptism a person joins not only the earthly group of people who administers the rite but the heavenly dimension of the Church where all the saved will live afterwards. First of all St Basil asks rhetorical questions in order to remind his unbaptized hearers that they do not belong to the Christian community yet: “When will you become Christian? When will we get to know you as ours (ὡς ἡμέτερον)?”<sup>55</sup> Then Basil continues and asserts that the baptism allows people to receive a gift which is the way to the Heavenly Kingdom and which is open for those who are not afraid to obey and go through the rite.<sup>56</sup> In the next sentences St Basil illustrates his point of view with the example of Jewish people who used circumcision as the sign of belonging to the people of God. Recalling the words from Genesis 17:14<sup>57</sup> he persuades his hearers to accept baptism because as the Jews were not counted among their people if they did not go through circumcision so his listeners do not belong to the “sharers of the resurrection” if they do not go through the rite of baptism.<sup>58</sup> Defending the necessity of baptism further on in this homily Basil uses the following metaphors: a distribution of gold, a freeing of slaves, and a cancelling of debts.<sup>59</sup> All these actions from the social life of the world look like incredible blessings and St Basil makes use of them in order to explain the advantages enjoyed by those who receive baptism and join the Church. St Basil also uses the analogy of citizenship to emphasize the importance of belonging to the Church. He is trying to persuade the hearers to “transfer *themselves* totally to the Lord” and to “give *their* names to be enrolled in the Church” as those who live in the city register

---

<sup>55</sup> EHB, PG 31:425B.

<sup>56</sup> EHB, PG 31:425C.

<sup>57</sup> EHB, PG 31:428A.

<sup>58</sup> EHB, PG 31:428A. “Sharer of resurrection” - κοινωνὸς τῆς ἀναστάσεως. Similar idea of “the circumcision without hands” or “the circumcision of Christ” can be found in HS XV.35.

<sup>59</sup> EHB, PG 31:429A-D.

themselves into the number of citizens. St Basil urges them to inscribe themselves “in this book in order to be transcribed in the one above”<sup>60</sup> implying that their membership in the earthly Church equals citizenship in the heavenly city.

One of the most interesting illustrations which St Basil provides in this homily is drawn from military life: an army's use of password during warlike activities. This password or “an agreed sign” (τὸ σύνθημα) helps “the friends” (οἱ φίλοι) not to mix with the enemy and separate easily from them.<sup>61</sup> Therefore, Basil implies that through baptism the believer receives the sign of God<sup>62</sup> that from now on she or he belongs to Him together with the other people in the Church who become their friends. On the contrary, all the others are considered on the side of the enemy. St Basil insists that “nobody will recognize you, whether you are ours or the enemy” if with these “mystical symbols” (τοῖς μυστικοῖς συμβόλοις) you will not prove “the friendship” with us.<sup>63</sup> He continues explaining that this sign is more like a seal or a mark (τὴν σφραγίδα) of God's ownership upon the believer.<sup>64</sup> In addition St Basil compares this sign with the blood on the top and sides of the doorframe from the story of Exodus 12:23-29 when the firstborns from the sealed Jewish families survived the plague.<sup>65</sup> The main meaning of this seal or mark has an eschatological orientation. St Basil asks the direct question: “How will you be able to return to Paradise, if you do not bear the seal of baptism?”<sup>66</sup> He is convinced that people will be recognized by God as His and allowed to participate in the heavenly life of the Church only if they received this mark in the earthly Church during their earthly life. He is trying to convey the idea that the postponement of baptism is dangerous, especially in a

---

<sup>60</sup> *EHB*, PG 31:440A.

<sup>61</sup> *EHB*, PG 31:432B.

<sup>62</sup> *EHB*, PG 31:432B. Actually, St Basil describes this sign with the words from Psalm 4.7 as “the light of the Lord's face” (τὸ φῶς τοῦ προσώπου Κυρίου).

<sup>63</sup> *EHB*, PG 31:432BC.

<sup>64</sup> *EHB*, PG 31:432C.

<sup>65</sup> *EHB*, PG 31:432C. Basil repeats the same idea and the story from Exodus in *HS XIV.31*.

<sup>66</sup> *EHB*, PG 31:428C.



case of unexpected death when people die unbaptized and, therefore, unsealed.<sup>67</sup> This seal serves as the testimony of their faith and obedience. St Basil stresses the idea that the Trinitarian faith of a person is a fundamental point for receiving baptism and the seal of salvation or God's ownership.

Faith and baptism are two kindred and inseparable ways of salvation: faith is perfected through baptism, baptism is established through faith, and both are completed by the same names. For as we believe in the Father and the Son and the Holy Ghost, so are we also baptized in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Ghost; first comes the confession, introducing us to salvation, and baptism follows, setting the seal upon our assent.<sup>68</sup>

Therefore, through baptism people receive the right to join the community of the faithful here on earth and in the future in the heavenly realm after their death. In some sense through these arguments St Basil defends the idea that there is no salvation outside the Church.<sup>69</sup> This reasoning leads St Basil to the necessity of answering the question: who then belongs to the Church? On one hand, the answer is obvious – those who accepted the baptism in the Church. On the other hand, everything becomes more complicated in face of divisions and schisms brought in by the groups of heretics and schismatics. In his writings St Basil is trying to work out the solution to this problem and to decide whose baptism could be accepted as legitimate and whose baptism should be rejected as not genuine. For Basil this is the question of vital importance because as we can see from the previous discussion he believes that the eternal destiny of people depends on the properly administered baptism.

Discussing this topic in his *Letter CLXXXVIII* St Basil mentions three groups of people who separate themselves from the Church: heretics, schismatics, and unlawful congregations. First, he provides the explanation of the differences between these groups,

---

<sup>67</sup> *EHB*, PG 31:436C. Actually the aim of the whole homily is to convince the hearers not to postpone their baptism because without baptism they were not bound by the rules of the Church and its penitential regulations. See Mayer, "Ecclesial Communion: The Letters of St Basil the Great revisited," 229.

<sup>68</sup> *HS XII.28*.

<sup>69</sup> The previous discussion on this issue is in chapter 4 of this thesis.

then on this basis he gives the opinion of “old authorities”<sup>70</sup> concerning the legitimacy of their rites of baptism, and then he shares his own thoughts about which of them can be considered as part of the Church. Following the “old authorities” of the Church St Basil applies the name “heretics” to people who are “altogether broken off and alienated in matters relating to the actual faith.”<sup>71</sup> Schismatics could be named as those “who had separated for some ecclesiastical reasons and questions capable of mutual solution.”<sup>72</sup> The last term on the list is “unlawful congregations” which means that they were held, according to Basil, by “disorderly presbyters or bishops or by uninstructed laymen.”<sup>73</sup> As an example, Basil provides the consequence of events that could bring these people to separation: commitment of crime, the discharging of ministerial functions, the refusal to submit to the canons, and, as a result, the organization of unlawful assembly. In the next sentence of the same letter St Basil gives another definition of schism: this is “the disagreement with members of the Church about repentance.”<sup>74</sup> Therefore, the separation of schismatics and unlawful gatherings has to do more with discipline than with the doctrines and faith. Most of the times these people or their leaders do not want to submit to canonical authority and in this sense it is more the question of penitence. From the context of the letter we can suggest that the right confession of faith was preserved in these groups. But St Basil still thinks that baptism of some schismatics should not be accepted by the Church as valid and effective.<sup>75</sup>

---

<sup>70</sup> Under “old authorities” Basil implies the previous generations of faithful Christians who already made the collective decisions about this kind of groups. Many of these decisions were written down in the Church canons which were accepted by the Councils of the Church. Basil also suggests that in dealing with some groups the further decisions have to be made the same way: “Wherefore, if this be determined on, more bishops ought to meet together in one place and publish the canon in these terms, that action may be taken without peril, and authority given to answers to questions of this kind.” See his *Letter CXCIX.XLVII*.

<sup>71</sup> *Letter CLXXXVIII.I*. For better understanding of the historical background see the footnotes to this letter in Bettenson, *The Later Christian Fathers*, 84-85. See also Jean Guitton, *Great Heresies & Church Councils* (London: Harvill Press, 1965), 11-95.

<sup>72</sup> *Letter CLXXXVIII.I*.

<sup>73</sup> *Letter CLXXXVIII.I*.

<sup>74</sup> *Letter CLXXXVIII.I*.

<sup>75</sup> We have to mention that on this issue St Basil has a different opinion than some other contemporary bishops in the Church. This conclusion can be made from the further reading of this letter and his *Letter CXCIX*. See a short summary of Basil's views on the baptism of schismatics and heretics in John H. Ericson, “Reception of Non-Orthodox into the Orthodox Church,” *Diakonia* 9 (1984-85): 72-75.

In the beginning of the letter he introduces his reader to the suggestion made by the older generation of Christians that the rest of believers have to admit the baptism of schismatics, on the ground that “they still belonged to the Church.” “As to those who assembled in unlawful congregations, Basil continues, their decision [old authorities] was to join them again to the Church, after they had been brought to a better state by proper repentance and rebuke, and so, in many cases, when men in orders had rebelled with the disorderly, to receive them on their repentance, into the same rank.”<sup>76</sup> However, St Basil is convinced that “those who had apostatized from the Church had no longer on them the grace of the Holy Spirit, for it ceased to be imparted when the continuity was broken.”<sup>77</sup> Although St Basil is aware that baptism of some schismatics is accepted in the other geographical locations he still does not allow them to join the church under his authority.<sup>78</sup> As he explains:

...they who were broken off had become laymen, and, because they are no longer able to confer on others that grace of the Holy Spirit from which they themselves are fallen away, they had no authority either to baptize or to ordain. And therefore those who were from time to time baptized by them, were ordered, as though baptized by laymen, to come to the church to be purified by the Church's true baptism.<sup>79</sup>

Therefore, we can conclude that in Basil's understanding there is only one Church which alone possesses the right to confer the grace of the Holy Spirit and this grace cannot be transferred to any other gatherings of people through the divisions made by human efforts. All these schisms and divisions do not do any good to those who left the Church because they lost the grace. This means they lost the ability to baptize and to ordain people

---

<sup>76</sup> Letter CLXXXVIII.I.

<sup>77</sup> Letter CLXXXVIII.I. In some sense St Basil even acts contrary to canon VIII of the Council of Nicaea but he seems to be very strict on this point. See also his Letter CXCIX. See notes on the canon VIII of Nicaea in William Bright, *The Canons of the First Four General Councils of Nicaea, Constantinople, Ephesus, and Chalcedon* (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1892), 29-38.

<sup>78</sup> Letter CLXXXVIII.I. For example, in this letter concerning the Cathari Basil says: “Nevertheless, since it has seemed to some of those of Asia that, for the sake of management of the majority, their baptism should be accepted, let it be accepted.” But in his Letter CXCIX.XLVII. he adds that he re-baptize Novatians (Cathari are followers of Novatian) on the same ground as Encratitae, Saccophori, and Apotactitae: “All these I re-baptize on the same principle. If among you their re-baptism is forbidden, for the sake of some arrangement, nevertheless let my principle prevail.”

<sup>79</sup> Letter CLXXXVIII.I. This passage also shows Basil's belief that baptism could be administered in the church only by ordained priest. St Basil grounds his arguments on the unity of the Church and from this he deduces the unity of baptism. It seems that he follows Cyprian's opinion on this matter. See Letter 69 – *Cyprian to Magnus* in Hamman, *Baptism: Ancient Liturgies and Patristic Texts*, 56.

for ministry and in this sense they cannot function even as a part of the Church. Although they can still preach about faith they are not able to provide salvation, in Basil's opinion, because their baptism is not valid. Once again we can notice how Basil defends the unity and authority of the Church through promoting the idea that there is no salvation outside the Church.

As was mentioned earlier, in the case of schismatics, there were disagreements with other Christians on the issue of discipline and submission to canonical authorities but this does not imply any false teaching or doctrinal controversies at least in the beginning of schism. On the contrary, St Basil posits that the disagreement of heretics had to do with “the actual faith in God.” This means that the improper understanding of creedal statements and the wrong profession of faith makes the Church reject the baptism of heretics altogether.<sup>80</sup> In Basil's thought this “actual faith” is always connected with the Trinitarian confession.

As we were baptized, so we profess our belief. As we profess our belief, so also we offer praise. As then baptism has been given us by the Saviour, in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Ghost, so, in accordance with our baptism, we make the confession of the creed, and our doxology in accordance with our creed.<sup>81</sup>

St Basil is convinced that only through administration of baptism in the name of the Trinity the faith of the person leads to salvation. For Basil, the rejection of invocation of one of three Persons of the Holy Trinity during the baptism is compatible with the rejection of the Christian faith. His argument is that, according to the Gospel, our Lord Himself taught His disciples to baptize in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and the Holy Spirit.<sup>82</sup> St Basil also believes that in some cases heresy could lead to eternal damnation as it happened to the Pepuzenes<sup>83</sup> because “blasphemy against the Holy Ghost

---

<sup>80</sup> *Letter CLXXXVIII.I.*

<sup>81</sup> *Letter CLIX.*

<sup>82</sup> *De Fide*, Clarke, 96. In the first book *Concerning Baptism* St Basil states: “Thus, baptized in the Name of the Holy Spirit, we were born anew. Having been born, we were also baptized in the Name of the Son, and we put on Christ. Then, having put on the new man according to God, we were baptized in the Name of the Father and called sons of God.” *CBapI*, Wagner, 386-387.

<sup>83</sup> *Letter CLXXXVIII.I.* According to Basil, they are “plainly heretical, for, by unlawfully and shamefully applying to Montanus and Priscilla the title of the Paraclete.” In so doing they “outraged the

admits of no forgiveness.”<sup>84</sup> Therefore, Basil concludes, “For those who have not been baptized into the names delivered to us have not been baptized at all.”<sup>85</sup>

The example of practical application of this belief can be found in Basil's *Letter CXCIX. XX* where he discusses the particular case of a woman that rejected the heretical teaching and returned to the Church. St Basil stresses the idea that people while in heresy should be considered as those “who have not yet put on Christ's yoke” and “do not recognize the laws of the Lord.” Therefore, Basil insists that they have to be received in the Church as catechumens and that they have remission of all their sins “from their faith in Christ” including all their previous misunderstandings. St Basil goes on and explains: “As a general rule, all sins formerly committed in the catechumenical state are not taken into account. The Church does not receive these persons without baptism.”<sup>86</sup> From this statement we can conclude that St Basil considers heretics as those who do not know God and His law and in this sense equal to pagans.

It is obvious that all these divisions and schisms undermine unity of the Church.<sup>87</sup> Also of the great importance for St Basil is the inability of these groups to safeguard the true baptism and its effectiveness and, therefore, the salvation of people who join their gatherings. The consequences of these heretical divisions are very dangerous and lead to the destruction of the eternal destiny of many people. In Basil's opinion, Trinitarian faith and baptism is a fundamental point of Christian communion with God. As he explains: “So we believe, and so we baptize into a Trinity of one Substance... If we keep this faith

---

Holy Ghost by comparing Him to men” and they also have “to be condemned for ascribing divinity to men.” Pepuzenes belonged to a sect (later half of second century) who “were apocalyptic enthusiasts claiming special inspiration of the Spirit.” See footnote 6 in Bettenson, *The Later Christian Fathers*, 84.

<sup>84</sup> *Letter CLXXXVIII.1*. Similar idea of blasphemy against the Holy Spirit can be also found in Basil's *Letter CLIX.2*: “All who call the Holy Ghost a creature we pity, on the ground that, by this utterance, they are falling into the unpardonable sin of blasphemy against Him.”

<sup>85</sup> *Letter CLXXXVIII.1*. We have to mention that St Basil is aware that this statement is in some sense in disagreement with the New Testament evidence when apostles baptized in the name of the Lord or in Christ only. He provides some explanations on this issue in *On the Holy Spirit XII.28* but he still comes to a conclusion that Trinitarian formula is the criterion of the authenticity of baptism.

<sup>86</sup> *Letter CXCIX.XX*.

<sup>87</sup> See Basil's opinion of heretical divisions in his *Hom. 23.4*. PG 31:596B-D. See also his *Letter CCLXIII* to the Western part of the Church on this issue.

[in Trinity], we show love towards Him and are counted worthy to abide in Him.”<sup>88</sup> On this ground, heretics are not able to have true relationships with God because of their faith discrepancy which contradicts the “actual faith” in the Holy Trinity. Also, according to St Basil, they are deprived of the grace of the Holy Spirit which can be granted only to those who received the true baptism of the Church.

In Basil's thought the idea of grace conferred in baptism is connected to the idea of human free will.<sup>89</sup> In his treatise *On the Holy Spirit* St Basil implies that in baptism a baptized person is not saved completely but God through the Church provides the opportunity for this person to work out his salvation with the help of God's grace.<sup>90</sup> Only on “the day of redemption” in heaven will the grace of the Spirit be “bestowed in more abundant and perfect measure”<sup>91</sup> on the righteous. The meaning of this concept of grace in St Basil's writings refers to the economy of salvation, performed both by the Son of God and by the Holy Spirit with the understanding that God the Father is involved in everything. St Basil connects the rite of baptism to what is done by Christ and what Christians are supposed to do as the result. Following the biblical teaching St Basil asserts:

All we who were baptized into Christ Jesus were baptized into His death. We were buried therefore with Him through baptism into death; knowing this, that our old man was crucified with Him, that the body of sin might be done away, that we should no longer be in bondage to sin.

[To be born again means] to put on the new man, which is being renewed unto knowledge after the image of Him that created him; as it is written: As many of you as were baptized into Christ did put on Christ.<sup>92</sup>

He is convinced that the ultimate goal of every Christian is to become Christlike.<sup>93</sup> In order to accomplish this task a person through baptism has to be born of the Spirit. In

---

<sup>88</sup> *De Fide*. Clarke, 96.

<sup>89</sup> As will be shown in this chapter St Basil believes that humans have the ability to accept or to reject the grace of the Holy Spirit.

<sup>90</sup> *HS XVI.40*. This idea of grace was kept and developed by the Orthodox Church. See Lossky, *Mystical Theology*, 196-216. See also Pomazansky, *Orthodox Dogmatic Theology*, 257-261. As Pomazansky nicely phrased it in his book: “Those who enter the Church have entered into the Kingdom of grace.” St Basil also provides a list of benefits accomplished by the death of Christ and conferred in baptism in his homily *EHB 5*, PG 31:433A.

<sup>91</sup> *HS XVI.40*.

<sup>92</sup> *The Morals*. Clarke, 130. St Basil follows here Romans 6:3, 4, 6; and Galatians 3:27.

<sup>93</sup> *HS I.2, IX.23*. See also *LR VIII*, Clarke, 169.

some sense a believer should become spiritual because “he should be, according to the measure given him, that very thing of which he was born [Spirit].”<sup>94</sup> St Basil means that through baptism the believer receives “the measure of grace” which makes him able to acquire the qualities of a real Christian:

What is the mark of a Christian? To be cleansed from all pollution of flesh and spirit, in the blood of Christ, to perfect holiness in the fear of God and love of Christ, and not to have spot or wrinkle or any such thing, but to be holy and without blemish.<sup>95</sup>

At the same time St Basil believes that people have the ability to reject this grace of the Spirit even after the baptismal rite “by the wickedness of their ways.”<sup>96</sup> In this sense he perceives this grace as the presence of the Spirit in the life of those who accepted baptism.

In Basil's opinion grace does not guarantee salvation and those who were “sealed by the Spirit for the day of redemption” have to “preserve pure and undiminished the first fruits which they received of the Spirit.”<sup>97</sup> Furthermore, being assisted by grace they have to learn the Christian way of life which means spiritual growth in love toward God and their neighbours.<sup>98</sup> As Basil insists: “...be enrolled in the Church... Take instructions, learn the constitution of the Gospels – vigilance of the eyes, control of the tongue, mastery of the body, humility of mind, purity of thought, and an end to anger.”<sup>99</sup> Therefore, the Church is the place where this growth begins with baptism and where it continues afterwards. Regenerated through grace given at baptism every human receives the opportunity to become completely transformed in the image of God. Basil reminds his readers that “those who have grieved the Holy Spirit by their evil ways, or have not increased the talents they were given, will be deprived of what they have received, and

---

<sup>94</sup> *The Morals* XX.2; LXXX.22, Clarke, 107; 130. St Basil uses the verse from John 3:6 to support his opinion.

<sup>95</sup> *The Morals*. Clarke, 130.

<sup>96</sup> *HS XVI.40*.

<sup>97</sup> *HS XVI.40*.

<sup>98</sup> *The Morals*. Clarke, 131. Several times in this passage St Basil gives the answer to the question “What is mark of a Christian?” and at the end he comes to a conclusion: “to love one another, even as Christ also loved us... to see the Lord always before him.”

<sup>99</sup> *EHB*, PG 31:440A. Translation is from Halton, *Exhortation to Holy Baptism*, 84. See the same idea of the Church as “the school of God's commandments” in *LR II*, Clarke, 153. See similar idea of learning and transformation in *CBap I*, Wagner, 358-359.

their share of grace will be given to others; ... they will be separated from the Spirit forever.”<sup>100</sup> However this separation takes place only after the physical death of the person. Until then the life of the baptized is penetrated by the Holy Spirit and he has a chance to return to God.

At present, before the day of judgment comes, even though the Spirit cannot dwell within those who are unworthy, he nevertheless is present in a way with those who have been baptized, hoping that their conversion will result in salvation. On the day of judgment, however, He will be completely cut off from the soul that defiled His grace.<sup>101</sup>

St Basil believes that even if a true conversion did not take place before the rite the grace given at baptism will be present with the person throughout his life while he stays in the Church.<sup>102</sup> Later on this idea of grace which is received at baptism and which assists humans in acquiring their salvation became one of the arguments in support of infant baptism. It is possible to make a conclusion from the passage cited above that if the Holy Spirit awaits the conversion of an adult who has been baptized, then He might await the conversion of an infant as well. It should be noted that St Basil never formulated this conclusion in his writings and his position on infant baptism is not very clear.

St Basil does not mention directly the baptism of infants in any of his works but there are some phrases which could be interpreted in a way that infants and little children are allowed to receive baptism.<sup>103</sup> For instance, there are passages where he persuades his hearers not to postpone their baptism and to receive it as early as possible and where he argues that Jews do not put off circumcision and they perform it on the eighth day.<sup>104</sup> The implied logic is that believers in Christ should not put off “the circumcision made without

---

<sup>100</sup> *HS XVI.40*. Anderson, 66.

<sup>101</sup> *HS XVI.40*. Anderson, 67.

<sup>102</sup> As we have seen earlier, Basil thinks that if even a Christian leave the Church he loses this grace because there is no salvation outside the Church.

<sup>103</sup> The book by W. Wall, *The History of Infant Baptism*, (London: Griffith, Farran, Browne & Co), 1889 is quite helpful. The author collected the short abstracts from the original writings of Church Fathers about infant baptism including the writings of St Basil and he provides *pro* and *contra* arguments based on these works. For background information see also Joachim Jeremias, *Infant Baptism in the First Four Centuries* (London: SCM Press, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed.), 1964.

<sup>104</sup> *EHB*, PG 31:428A. *HS XV.35*.



hands.”<sup>105</sup> In another passage St Basil proposes to his hearers that the young are to guard their youth with “the bridle of baptism.”<sup>106</sup> Here is Basil's argument: “Who has guaranteed you the full term of old age? Who can guarantee the future so confidently? Do you not see infants snatched away, and those in prime of life carried off?”<sup>107</sup> From Basil's writings we also can get a picture that infants and children were present during the service. In his *Homily 8* he says that newborn infants are being brought into the congregation and “they should be present there indeed” but with their parents.<sup>108</sup> Also, children who have left their books at school join their voices with the congregation. They do the responses together with adults as a kind of pleasure and fun, “making our grief into a holiday.”<sup>109</sup> However, it is not obvious from the context whether these children and infants were previously baptized or not. On the evidence given in the homily it is impossible to decide how long they stayed with the congregation and when they were supposed to leave the church worship.<sup>110</sup>

Although, as we can see, St Basil insists on baptism of young people it still does not mean that he suggests this should happen as soon as a baby is born. He himself was baptised as an adult although he grew up in a Christian family and the practice of infant baptism was not common at this time.<sup>111</sup> If we look more closely at the text we can notice that Basil's hearers “have been catechised in the word from their childhood (νηπιος).”<sup>112</sup> This means that they started to attend the church when they were children but they are not yet baptised. The other observation might be that if these people have reasons to postpone

---

<sup>105</sup> *HS XV.35.*

<sup>106</sup> *EHB*, PG 31:432C.

<sup>107</sup> *EHB*, PG 31:436C. Translation is from Halton, 83.

<sup>108</sup> *Hom. 8*, PG 31:309CD; 312A. In this homily Basil mentions that the infants were brought to the church and left there alone without their parents. The reason is unclear but he rebukes the parents for doing such things.

<sup>109</sup> *Hom. 8*, PG 31:309C.

<sup>110</sup> If there were any hints in Basil's homily that they stayed for Eucharist we could conclude that they were baptised. Many scholars who support the idea of infant baptism do not discuss the infant Eucharist but these two rites in the Eastern Church go together and cannot be separated. See Paul King Jewett, *Infant Baptism & the Covenant of Grace* (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1978), 41-42.

<sup>111</sup> This observation can be also supported by the historical fact that only later when Augustine of Hippo provided the theology for infant baptism it became common practice. See David F. Wright, *What Has Infant Baptism done to Baptism?* (Milton Keynes: Paternoster, 2005), 12. See also Fedwick, “A Chronology of the Life and Works of Basil of Caesarea” in *Basil of Caesarea: Christian, Humanist, Ascetic* (2 vols. Toronto: Pontifical Institute of Mediaeval Studies, 1981), 6.

<sup>112</sup> *EHB*, PG 31:425B.

their own baptism, probably, they would not baptize their children either. One more argument could be taken from Basil's description of the baptismal ceremony. The list of actions from the rite implies that those who receive baptism should be of responsible age. They were supposed to say some words, lift their hands to heaven, stand on their feet, bend their knees, speak the confession aloud, give adherence to God, and renounce the Enemy.<sup>113</sup> Therefore, it is possible for children to accomplish this but not infants.

On the basis of discussed arguments we can come to several conclusions concerning infants and children in the Church: First, St Basil considers children and infants worthy to be present during the liturgy; second, they were part of the communal life and they received “the word” or instructions from an early age; third, St Basil does insist on early baptism and on this ground children could be allowed to receive baptism at the age when they are able to follow the ceremony; fourth, since baptism on death-bed was an accepted practice,<sup>114</sup> the same could be provided for a very sick infant.

Although St Basil in his writings talks of baptism upon personal profession of faith we also have to take into consideration that there is evidence of the baptism of infants from the second century on.<sup>115</sup> We do not have evidence that St Basil practiced infant baptism but this possibility cannot be excluded because of his serious attitude toward the rite and his belief that salvation of everybody should be secured through true baptism. In Basil's understanding baptism is an important step in the life of a believer and the life of the Church. This is the moment of the establishment of a new relationship with God and admission to the community of His people since in baptism the adoption takes place.<sup>116</sup> All humans are supposed to accept baptism in order that they may receive their salvation

---

<sup>113</sup> *EHB*, PG 31:436C. In the following centuries when baptism of infants became common practice the words were said for them or instead of them.

<sup>114</sup> St Basil describes it in his *EHB*, PG 31:436C.

<sup>115</sup> Both Tertullian in his *De Baptismo* 18.4 (200-206 AD) and Cyprian in his *Letter to Fidus* (AD 251-253) discussed baptism of infants. See the abstracts from both writings in W. Wall, *The History of Infant Baptism*, 41-50; 61-73. See also the translation of Tertullian's treatise in Hamman, *Baptism: Ancient Liturgies and Patristic Texts*, 30-49.

<sup>116</sup> *HS* X.26, XV.35. *EHB*, PG 31: 425A; 433A. Several times St Basil talks of grace of adoption received in baptism – *νιοθεσίας χάρισμα*.

and enter the life eternal in the heavenly Church. Both a new spiritual birth of a Christian and his/her spiritual growth happens in the Church and through the Church's actions including the baptismal rite and the teaching.

## **Eucharist – maintaining the life of the Church**

In Basil's time the Eucharist was part of the liturgy which revealed who really belonged to the community of faithful and who stayed outside.<sup>117</sup> This is another “mystery” of the Church which is available only for people that went through regeneration, enlightenment, and adoption in baptism. They are accepted by the community on the ground of their public profession of faith in the Holy Trinity and the fulfilment of all the requirements prescribed by the “unwritten tradition”<sup>118</sup> of the Church concerning baptism. The Eucharist is the next step which happens immediately after baptism and is closely connected to it.<sup>119</sup> This is fellowship of Christians who once were sealed by the grace of God and who continue their journey together in the right direction. “What is the mark of a Christian? -Basil asks, - To be cleansed from all pollution... to be holy and without blemish, and so to eat the body of Christ and drink his blood.”<sup>120</sup>

This participation in the “mysteries” from the beginning identifies the believers: who they are, what they are supposed to do, to whom they belong and where they are going. In his writings St Basil clearly describes the main characteristics of those who are counted worthy to “eat the bread and drink the cup of the Lord”: First, they are marked as the

---

<sup>117</sup> Non-baptised participants of the service and catechumens were not allowed to take part in the Eucharist and they had to leave the congregation before that rite usually took place. See Jungmann, *The Early Liturgy*, 159.

<sup>118</sup> In his treatise *On the Holy Spirit* Basil explains that what was practised before by other faithful believers came down to the next generation not as “written teaching” but as “mystical tradition.” For example, in preface and in conclusion of Eucharist they add some words which are not written in the Gospel. These words, he implies, were delivered secretly only through the practice from first Christians to Basil's contemporaries as the “unwritten tradition.” See *HS XXVII.66*. St Basil testifies that this tradition was delivered to him personally “by one [Dianius, bishop of the Cappadocian Caesarea] who spent a long life in the service of God, and by him *he* was both baptized, and admitted to the ministry of the church.” Therefore, he uses the same form, rule and terms as the presbyters before him. See *HS XXIX.72*.

<sup>119</sup> After the baptism and the triple immersion in water the bishop laid his hands on the baptized and signed them with the chrism on the forehead. Then they were allowed to receive the communion for the first time. See the whole procedure in Fisher, “Baptism,” 56.

<sup>120</sup> *The Morals LXXX.22*. Clarke, 130.

Christians; second, they are supposed to become “holy and without blemish,” to become Christlike; third, they belong to this people with whom they partake communion and “they love one another”; fourth, they hope “to see the Lord” with whom they are in communion as well.<sup>121</sup> According to the sequences of the rites in the Church, the believers receive their identity at baptism and they reaffirm it through the following Eucharist. The difference between these two “mysteries” is that baptism as initiation into the Church happens only once<sup>122</sup> and the Eucharist should be practiced repeatedly.

When one of the ladies<sup>123</sup> asks St Basil of the frequency with which the Eucharist could be partaken, he answers that “it is good and beneficial to communicate every day, and to partake of the holy body and blood of Christ.”<sup>124</sup> As the basis for this statement he uses the words of the Lord Himself from the Gospel: “He that eats my flesh and drinks my blood has eternal life.”<sup>125</sup> In the following sentence St Basil asserts that nobody will doubt that “to share frequently in life, is the same thing as to have manifold life.”<sup>126</sup> Then he shares that his own custom is to communicate four times a week, “on the Lord's day, on Wednesday, on Friday, and on the Sabbath, and on the other days if there is a commemoration of any Saint.”<sup>127</sup> The whole passage implies that Christians should participate in the Eucharist as often as possible. Although St Basil does not give the exact reason why communion should be received frequently we can understand that he considers

---

<sup>121</sup> See all these points in his *The Morals LXXX.22* when Basil answers the questions “What is the mark of a Christian?” and “What is the mark of those who eat the bread and drink the cup of the Lord?” The translation is from Clarke, 130-131.

<sup>122</sup> As we have seen earlier in Basil's opinion true baptism happens only once and after that even if the believers commit sin the grace of God still stays with them and waits for their repentance. St Basil believes that there should be taken some penitential procedures but not re-baptism. See his canonical letters concerning sins committed by Christians. For example, *Letter CCXVII*, and *Letter CLXXXVIII*. As Basil himself put it: “We do not, as is the fashion of the Jews, wash ourselves at each defilement, but own the baptism of salvation to be one.” *HS XV.35*.

<sup>123</sup> The letter is addressed to the Patrician Caesaria but, unfortunately, there was not preserved any historical information who this lady was.

<sup>124</sup> *Letter XCIII*. This is the most interesting fragment of Eucharistic material which is found in St Basil writings. Although there were some debates about the authenticity of the letter the contemporary scholars agreed that there appear no worthy reasons for doubting Basil's authorship. Fedwick listed this letter as authentic in *Basil of Caesarea: Christian, Humanist, Ascetic*, xxi.

<sup>125</sup> John 6:54. See *Letter XCIII*.

<sup>126</sup> *Letter XCIII*.

<sup>127</sup> *Letter XCIII*. Saturday was the day of foretasting of resurrection, Wednesdays and Fridays were days of fasting. In this context the term “saint” means martyr. See George S. Bebis, “Introduction to the Liturgical Theology of St Basil the Great,” 281-282.

it as a source of eternal life or, in Basil's words, "manifold life." Therefore, we can see the logic in Basil's thinking that baptism is the new birth of a Christian<sup>128</sup> and the Eucharist may be perceived as some spiritual nourishment which should be partaken often in order to support believer's life.<sup>129</sup>

After such an encouragement to take communion daily the question could arise: does this mean that people have to go to the Church every day in order to receive the Eucharist. In the same *Letter XCIII* St Basil explains that "in times of persecution to be compelled to take communion in his own hand without the presence of a priest or minister is not a serious offence."<sup>130</sup> He does not say here that it is possible or acceptable to perform "the mystery" of Eucharist themselves without priest.<sup>131</sup> What he really means is that after the bread and wine were already consecrated during the liturgy in the Church they could be taken home and then partaken in portions when it is convenient for the believer. St Basil is convinced that after the mysteries are completed the participants can use the elements of the Eucharist when they feel a need.

...when the priest gives the portion, the recipient takes it with complete power over it, and so lifts it to his lips with his own hand. It has the same validity whether one portion or several portions are received from the priest at the same time.<sup>132</sup>

The ground for legitimacy of these actions is the customary practice which was held by the Christians at Alexandria and in Egypt. St Basil points especially to a long tradition in the deserts where "all the solitaries" kept the communion at their homes.<sup>133</sup> Therefore, in his understanding the Eucharist is both public and private. The first and the most

---

<sup>128</sup> Basil uses this analogy for baptism in *HS X.26*.

<sup>129</sup> The title of chapter 3 in Basil's book *On Baptism* mentions this idea of nourishment: "That he who has been regenerated through Baptism should thenceforth be nourished by participation in the Holy Mysteries." See *CBap I*, Wagner, 386.

<sup>130</sup> *Letter XCIII*. The context of the letter actually implies that the daily communion can be taken without presence of the priest not only in a case of persecutions.

<sup>131</sup> On the contrary, he even believes that it is not allowed to celebrate the mystery and "the holy things" in a common house except in an emergency. *SR CCCX*, Clarke, 350.

<sup>132</sup> *Letter XCIII*. See a footnote 2332 to this epistle: "The custom of the reservation of the Sacrament is, as is well known, of great antiquity. cf. Justin Martyr, *Apol. i.* 85; Tertull., *De Orat.* xix. and *Ad Ux.* ii. 5; S. Cyprian, *De Lapsis cxxxii.*; Jerome, *Ep. cxxv.* Abuses of the practice soon led to prohibition."

<sup>133</sup> *Letter XCIII*.

important part of the mystery when the wine and bread are prayed over and consecrated should be done only by a priest and during the public service when the whole congregation is present.<sup>134</sup> This corporate act of giving thanks (*εὐχαριστία*) and praise to the Lord is the time when the believers communicate with God as the Church. The second part, when this bread and wine are distributed among the believers it is more private. According to St Basil, the recipients take it “with complete power over it” and they are allowed to keep it and use it again and again afterwards because “the recipient, participating in it each time as entire, is bound to believe that he properly takes and receives it from the giver.”<sup>135</sup> The idea is implied that these elements now can help to maintain the believer's life and the person may use them for this purpose privately. This shows one more time Basil's opinion about the importance of receiving this bread and wine often. It seems that for him these consecrated elements of the Eucharist themselves possess something that provides strength for the believers and leads to the eternal life. There is a notion in Basil's writings that during the rite and especially the Eucharistic prayer the transformation of bread and wine happens.<sup>136</sup> He does not say directly that they become the real body and blood of Christ but he uses these words “body and blood” in his writings.<sup>137</sup> St Basil is also convinced that the words which the priest says have “great importance to the validity of the ministry.”<sup>138</sup> It is only after the priest “has completed the

---

<sup>134</sup> This is the core element of the *Liturgy of St Basil* which was kept and celebrated throughout the centuries.

<sup>135</sup> *Letter XCIII.*

<sup>136</sup> According to text of the *Liturgy* which bears the name of St Basil during the Invocation of the Spirit on the Holy Gifts a priest is supposed to say the following words: “...that thy Holy Spirit may come upon us and upon these gifts set forth, to bless, hallow, and declare this bread indeed the precious body of our Lord and God and Saviour Jesus Christ, and what is in this cup the precious blood of thy Christ.” Unfortunately, we cannot be sure that it was exactly the words which St Basil used during the mystery. If he used them then this is a proof that he believed into the complete transformation of the Holy Gifts. The text is from *The Orthodox Liturgy being The Divine Liturgy of S. John Chrysostom and S. Basil the Great* (London: SPCK, 1939), 73.

<sup>137</sup> We can suggest with a high probability that St Basil followed the common belief of the Church that the bread and wine turned really into the Lord's body and blood which communicate immortal life. In the previous centuries this was used as an argument against the Docetists' denial of the reality of Christ's body. See historical background in Kelly, *Early Christian Doctrines*, 197-198.

<sup>138</sup> *HS XXVII.66.*

sacrifice and given it” to the participants they may use it as a special bread and wine.<sup>139</sup>

His words indicate that a change or conversion takes place and the bread and wine are affected by the administrated rite in a way that now they can support the lives of the believers.<sup>140</sup>

Though it seems that participation in the Eucharist is helpful and will do only good to the believer there is a condition to it. Following the biblical teaching St Basil asserts that “he who approaches the communion without consideration of the manner in which participation in the body and blood of Christ is granted is in no way benefited; but he that partakes unworthily is condemned.”<sup>141</sup> In Basil's opinion, the community of faithful has the right to decide who is worthy to take part in the Eucharist and to apply the penitential rules to unworthy ones.<sup>142</sup> In the situation when sin is committed openly St Basil believes that the Church has the opportunity to protect the members from condemnation and to discipline them at the same time. This exclusion from the “mystery” is considered as a punishment because the believer is cut off from the source of life. However, this action leads to the correction of the person and in the end to the restoration of fellowship with people and with God the Trinity<sup>143</sup> which is the ultimate goal of every Christian.

The whole structure of the Eucharistic service is created in a way that reflects the importance of the special relationship between the participants.<sup>144</sup> Many things they have

---

<sup>139</sup> PG 32:485AB. B. Jackson uses in his translation of the *Letter XCIII* a word “offering” instead of “sacrifice” which is slightly different. The use of the term “sacrifice” (*θυσία*) is very interesting but a comparatively shortage of texts about the Eucharist in Basil's writings makes it almost impossible to understand which meaning of this term he is using. See different suggestions and options of this meaning in R.J. Hallburton, “The Patristic Theology of the Eucharist” in *The Study of Liturgy* (Edited by Cheslyn Johns, Geoffrey Wainwright, Edwards Yarnold Sj, and Paul Bradshaw, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed., London: SPCK, 1992), 248-249.

<sup>140</sup> Later on the Eastern Orthodox Church developed and completely accepted the idea that during the Eucharist the bread and wine actually are changed into the real Body and Blood of Christ by the coming down of the Holy Spirit. See Pomazansky, *Orthodox Dogmatic Theology*, 279. See also Ware, *The Orthodox Church*, 290-291.

<sup>141</sup> *The Morals XXI.2*. Clarke, 108. See the same idea in *CBap 1*, Wagner, 389.

<sup>142</sup> See, for example, his *Letter CLXXXVIII*, *Letter CXCIX*, *Letter CCXVII*.

<sup>143</sup> As we mentioned earlier in this chapter the whole liturgy has completely Trinitarian orientation. See Cyprian Robert Hutcheon, “A Sacrifice of Praise”: A Theological Analysis of the Pre-Sanctus of the Byzantine Anaphora of St Basil.” *St Vladimir's Theological Quarterly* 45 (2001): 3-23.

<sup>144</sup> Although we cannot be sure about the particular words of *the Liturgy* most scholars are agree that the main elements and the core of *the Liturgy* were kept from Basil's time. Therefore, an analysis of these elements concerning the communal aspect can be helpful.

to do together in unison - to “sing hymns unto the Lord,”<sup>145</sup> to say words in response, to confirm with “Amen”, to reaffirm their faith through reading of the Creed, and to offer praises to God. These liturgical acts manifest their unity in love. In order to enter into fellowship with the Holy Trinity the believers participating in the liturgy should exist in love with those who are present in the Church. Hence, during the Eucharistic service in response to the exhortation “let us love one another,” there follows the, so called, “Kiss of Peace.”<sup>146</sup> This holy kiss is an expression of agape love among believers as followers of Christ who brought them this peace. Another great part of the Eucharistic service which demonstrates the bond of Christians is the commemoration of all the members of the Church.<sup>147</sup> These prayers for the departed and the living remind the believers that some day they will meet each other at God's table in the Heavenly Kingdom.

We can notice that though the Eucharist happens here and now among the believers it looks back to the past and forward to the future at the same time. On one hand, St Basil believes that the faithful believers do this in order to keep “in perpetual memory Him Who died for them and rose again.”<sup>148</sup> During the service they recite the mighty acts of God and the whole salvation history.<sup>149</sup> On the other hand, the meaning and the effects of the Eucharist are more effective than just that of a memorial ceremony.<sup>150</sup> St Basil is convinced that “participation in the body and blood of Christ is necessary for eternal life.”<sup>151</sup> This “mystery” reminds the believers where they came from and what Christ has done for them, and why they should be thankful. At the same time it points to their future and directs them to the One whose “body and blood” they partake. In one of the rules of

---

<sup>145</sup> See *The Morals XXI.4*, Clarke, 108.

<sup>146</sup> *The Orthodox Liturgy*, 63. See more about this part of the Eucharistic liturgy in Gilbert Cope, “Kiss of Peace” in *A New Dictionary of Liturgy and Worship*, 250-251.

<sup>147</sup> *The Orthodox Liturgy being The Divine Liturgy of S. John Chrysostom and S. Basil the Great*, 77, 81.

<sup>148</sup> *The Morals LXXX.22*, Clarke, 130. See also *The Morals XXI.3*, Clarke, 107.

<sup>149</sup> For example, the prayers from the *Liturgy* that bears the name of St Basil in *The Orthodox Liturgy*, 62, 68.

<sup>150</sup> St Basil uses the word *ἀνάμνησις*. PG 31:740B.

<sup>151</sup> *The Morals XXI.1*, Clarke, 107.



his *Moralia*<sup>152</sup> St Basil alleges the consequences of communion with the words from John 6:53-54 about the resurrection. The Eucharist helps the Christians to move from the state of corruption to the resurrection through partaking the flesh and blood of their resurrected Lord. From now on they are called “to perfect holiness in the fear of God and love of Christ.”<sup>153</sup> For this reason God through the Church provides help to His children that “they who live may no longer live to themselves but unto Him.”<sup>154</sup> Therefore, St Basil believes that the “mysteries” are given by God to assist the growth of believers into Christ. Only in the Church may they have this communion of love. On this basis, those who separate themselves from the Church cannot take part in the true Eucharist. As we have seen earlier in Basil's theology there is only one true Church and all heretics do not belong to another part within the Church but they completely “cut themselves off from the whole Church,”<sup>155</sup> from her love, from the true teaching and from her “mysteries”. Unity of the Church is one of the principal themes of the Eucharistic service. The Christians offer up a special prayer for this unity in faith and life. But there is an understanding in Basil that this unity comes only through their love of God and their love of other Christians which is closely connected to the right profession of their faith in the Trinity and their participation in the true “mysteries” of the Church.

### **Penance – restoring to the Church**

The penitential system in the Church plays an important role in the liturgical life of Christians because it is created in order to prevent some believers from taking part in liturgy and to let them know that they are in danger of losing their salvation and life eternal. The authority of the ecclesiastical canons is grounded in their communal acceptance and in Basil's thinking these rules have “the force of law” in the Church. He

---

<sup>152</sup> *The Morals XXI.2*, Clarke, 108.

<sup>153</sup> *The Morals LXXX.22*, Clarke, 130.

<sup>154</sup> *The Morals XXI.3*, Clarke, 108.

<sup>155</sup> *Letter CCIV.7*.

believes that they “have been handed down to us by holy men”<sup>156</sup> which means that the previous generation of faithful believers in the Church together worked out the system that prescribes what shall be done with those who are guilty of different sins.

Among the writings of St Basil there are several letters which contain ecclesiastical regulations concerning penitential discipline and which provide the information for better understanding of the liturgical life of the Church in the fourth century.<sup>157</sup> They explain in great detail who, for whatever reason and for how long there should be restraint of participation in liturgy and the Eucharist.<sup>158</sup> St Basil describes four degrees of the separation of the penitent from the assembly of faithful during the liturgical service: weeping, hearing, kneeling, and standing.<sup>159</sup> First of all, until the sinners do not give up their wrongdoing they are not allowed even to enter the place where the Christians have their worship services. After believers admit the sin in their lives and cease sinning they are able to start the process of restoration to communal life. The first step is a state of *weeping* when the person has to stay outside the Church building near the doors begging the other Christians to pray for him. Next is the state of *hearing* and the penitents have the permission to listen to Scriptures and to instructions together with the catechumens and have to leave immediately afterwards. At this stage of penitential punishment they are not allowed to pray with the community as a part of them. The third degree is *kneeling* which gives the people an opportunity to pray on their knees during the liturgy. Lastly the state of *standing* comes when they are allowed to stay with others during the whole service but still do not participate in communion. Only after all these stages of repentance are completed can believers be admitted to the Eucharist. In Basil's *Letter CCXVII* we can find

---

<sup>156</sup> *Letter CLX.2.*

<sup>157</sup> These are three so-called Canonical *Letters CLXXXVIII, CXCIX, CCXVII*. In some other letters St Basil also discusses the rules or customs of the Church: *Letters CLX* – about unlawful marriage, *LIII* – about receiving money from candidates for ordination, *LIV* – about the ordination of unworthy men, *CCLXXXVII* and *CCLXXXVIII* – about excommunication.

<sup>158</sup> From these canonical letters we can conclude that the existing system of penitential discipline was wholly public and there is no sign of a sacrament of private penance at that time.

<sup>159</sup> For example, see *Letter CCXVII. LXXV*. St Basil does not create his own penitential system but follows the existing tradition in Asia Minor. The same states of separation had been mentioned in Gregory Thaumaturgos work *Epistula canonica*. See Quasten, *Patrology*, 234.

an example of the duration of the different periods while these states of separation are applied.

The intentional homicide, who has afterwards repented, will be excommunicated from the sacrament for twenty years. The twenty years will be appointed for him as follows: for four he ought to *weep*, standing outside the door of the house of prayer, beseeching the faithful as they enter in to offer prayer in his behalf, and confessing his own sin. After four years he will be admitted among the *hearers*, and during five years will go out with them. During seven years he will go out with the *kneelers*, praying. During four years he will only *stand* with the faithful, and will not take part in the oblation. On the completion of this period he will be admitted to participation of the sacrament.<sup>160</sup>

According to canons, the severity of discipline in some sense is equal to the heaviness of sins committed by the believer and the length of these periods varies for different sins. They may last for several years and sometimes until the end of life.<sup>161</sup> What was really important for St Basil is not the length of time but the “the fruits of repentance” or “the manner of penance.”<sup>162</sup> He is convinced that “it is necessary that those who repent should weep bitterly and show from the heart the rest of the things proper to repentance.”<sup>163</sup> In Basil's opinion through the discipline penitents are winning their salvation. Therefore, “the mere giving up of sins is not sufficient for them” but “they need also fruits meet for repentance.”<sup>164</sup> The examples of such fruits are given in Basil's homily on *Psalm XXXII* when the repentant is expected to destroy the consequences of committed sin by works of righteousness opposed to it:

Have you reviled? Bless. Have you defrauded? Make restitution. Have you been intoxicated? Fast. Have you made false pretensions? Be humble. Have you been envious? Console. Have you murdered? Bear witness, or afflict your body with equivalent of martyrdom through confession.<sup>165</sup>

---

<sup>160</sup> *Letter CCXVII. LVI.* However, nothing more is said about how the penitents were supervised or how the process was carried on in practice, and how these people were kept out from the liturgy.

<sup>161</sup> For example, *Letter CCXVII. LXXXIII.*

<sup>162</sup> *Letter CCXVII. LXXXIV.* See also *SR. XIII*, Clarke, 235.

<sup>163</sup> *The Morals I.3*, Clarke, 101.

<sup>164</sup> *The Morals I.4*, Clarke, 101.

<sup>165</sup> *Ps. XXXII.2.* Way, 229-230.

The repentance should be genuine and sincere and in this case, Basil asserts, “worthy repentance always brings with it a firm hope of forgiveness.”<sup>166</sup> It should not be only regret, or awareness of one's sinfulness, or acknowledgment of wrong actions. Rather it is a strong desire and a firm intention for correction which are followed by the fulfilment of all practical steps, prescribed by the Church.

Interestingly enough, the basis of forgiveness is not the work done by the repentant but “God's mercies and the greatness of God's compassion.”<sup>167</sup> St Basil states very clearly that the remission of sins “set forth in the blood of Christ” and the number and greatness of sins should not be a reason for despair. He is convinced that “it is impossible to measure the mercy or number the compassions of God” and “if the manner of our repentance is worthy” then even the multitude of sins might be forgiven.<sup>168</sup> However, in order to join the Christian community again as equals penitents are supposed to follow the rules and meet all the requirements.

The baptism of believers is the point after which the Church authorities have to deal with post-baptismal wrongdoings and only to Christians may they prescribe the canonical discipline in order to keep them saved. Obviously, all the sins committed prior to baptism were remitted during the sacrament or, as Basil calls it, the mystery. Afterwards, in a case of sinful actions the Christian who committed a sin has to go through ecclesial punishment which looks severe and shameful. There are also social consequences closely related to it when almost all communications with the offender are suspended.<sup>169</sup> This is one of the reasons why some people decided to postpone their baptism. It seems that they were not sure about their faith and their ability to avoid sinful behaviour. Therefore, they were

---

<sup>166</sup> *SR LVIII*. Clarke, 251. As an example of a real penitence St Basil uses the people of Nineveh and others in his *Homily* 8, PG 31:316.

<sup>167</sup> *SR XIII*, Clarke, 235.

<sup>168</sup> *SR XIII*, Clarke, 235. In order to support his idea St Basil refers to Isaiah 1:18 and to the parable of prodigal son. See also Basil's attitude toward the former sinners in his *Letter CXII*: “Yet another plea that I ought to urge is this, that we do not chastise transgressors for what is past and gone, (for what means can be devised for undoing the past?) but either that they may be reformed for the future, or may be an example of good behaviour to others.”

<sup>169</sup> *Letter CCLXXXVIII*.

afraid that at some point in their Christian life they would have to go through the penitential procedure. St Basil rebukes them for such attitude because he believes that his hearers do not want to give up their sins and the earthly pleasure related to them. He ascribes the list of sins and the following words to the representative of those who delay receiving baptism:

Leave me alone. I will use my body to enjoy what is shameful, I will wallow in the mud of pleasure, I will bloody my hands, I will plunder what belongs to others, I will walk in wickedness, I will curse and swear. And I will receive baptism when I finally cease from sin.<sup>170</sup>

In Basil's opinion these people will go through the punishment anyway but it will be "the torment for eternity."<sup>171</sup> Their sinful life will lead to the commitment "to fire because of the pleasures of the flesh."<sup>172</sup> On the other hand, baptism will keep them saved for enjoyment of heavenly blessings. Consequently, we can come to a conclusion that in Basil's thinking the temporary ecclesial punishment will help the Christians avoid eternal punishment which is much more severe than any earthly one that the Church can use. St Basil shares with the hearers his concerns that they could be lost forever if they continue to choose sinful pleasures instead of the life proper to Christians who are loved and corrected by the community. As Basil admits:

I am driven to tears when I see that you prefer deeds of wickedness to the great glory of God and that you exclude yourself from the blessed promises in clinging to sin and seductive lust and thus lose sight of the blessings of that heavenly Jerusalem.<sup>173</sup>

There is an obvious contrast between the destiny of those who belong to the community and those who are in a state in which they "choose rather to serve the pleasures of the flesh than to serve the Lord, and refuse to accept the Gospel life."<sup>174</sup> St Basil elaborates this idea in his canonical letters in order to convince the readers to follow the ecclesial rules. He is convinced that for the faithful ones there is a bright future when

---

<sup>170</sup> *EHB*, PG 31:433B. Translated by Halton, 82.

<sup>171</sup> *EHB*, PG 31:444B.

<sup>172</sup> *EHB*, PG 31:444B.

<sup>173</sup> *EHB*, Halton, 87.

<sup>174</sup> *Letter CCXVII.LXXXIV*.

they see the glory of God and when all the promises of the Lord will be fulfilled. At the same time the opposite group will experience the wrath of God and everlasting damnation.

St Basil believes that each person who committed sin can be “made good through penitence” and these rules are helpful for the believer because at the end he will “receive the loving-kindness of God.”<sup>175</sup> At the same time these penitential actions serve as an example for other believers in the Church.<sup>176</sup> As Basil says in one of his letters when he discusses a case of bribery among the Church ministers: “I hope then that what I am writing about it may be taken by the guilty as medicine, by the innocent as a warning, by the indifferent, in which class I trust none of you may be found, as a testimony.”<sup>177</sup> There is a notion in Basil's writings that the penitential system fulfils several functions: a) a discipline for wrong doers and the renewal of their spiritual condition, b) a warning to other Christians and their edification,<sup>178</sup> c) a restoration of sinners to “the communion of the body of Christ.”<sup>179</sup> It is not a punishment in a strict sense but pedagogical and healing acts of the Church which are applied when needed to those who have sinned.

In Basil's understanding the main goal of the penitence is to help the believers not to lose their salvation. He perceives all sins from an eschatological perspective because they have eternal consequences: “the end of sin is death” and “the end of the commandment of God is eternal life.”<sup>180</sup> The role of the Church is to guard the believers from harm caused by sin and to provide them with rules which may correct the behaviour of sinners and protect the faithful from the influence of committed sin. In Basil's thought we see the idea

---

<sup>175</sup> *Letter CCXVII.LXXIV.*

<sup>176</sup> *Letter CCLXXXVII.*

<sup>177</sup> *Letter LIII.* This word “medicine” can lead to the idea of sin as a spiritual disease which is noted in the Orthodox thinking. Hence, the penance is seen as a means of spiritual healing. See, for example, Pomazansky, *Orthodox Dogmatic Theology*, 292.

<sup>178</sup> See, for example, *The Morals XI.2-3*, Clarke, 104. Basil asserts: “...when some have incurred the judgment of God's anger, the rest ought to fear and correct themselves.”

<sup>179</sup> *Letter CCXVII.LXXXII.*

<sup>180</sup> *The Morals X.1*, Clarke, 104. Although St Basil discusses in canons only the punishment for greater sins he strongly believes that all sins without repentance lead unto death. In this sense, it is “impossible to observe this distinction” between sins. Even a smaller sin is disobedience to God and if a person does not repent then he “shall not see life”. See *SR CCXCIII*, Clarke, 342. Therefore, no sin can be considered harmless and all sins are subject to repentance (though not always the public penance is involved). As Basil noted that even “sinning in ignorance is not without danger.” See *The Morals.IX.5*, Clarke 104.

of the solidarity of all members: if one member commits a sin this has its impact on the entire community.<sup>181</sup> As illustrations he uses the examples of Achan (Joshua 7:1-27) and of Zimri (Numbers 25:6-15) from the Old Testament when the sufferings of the whole nation were caused by a sin of just one person.<sup>182</sup> In these stories the Judge or the priest had to take action in order to stop God's wrath or the plague and to save the community from the destructive consequences of sin. St Basil believes that in his time the Church and her ministers may act as God's representatives because they are given from God "the power of loosing and binding."<sup>183</sup> Using this allusion to Matthew 16:19, Basil justifies the ecclesiastical practice of imposing and remitting penalties for sin. He asserts that when the penitent "exercises penitence with greater zeal" the bishop has the authority to "lessen the period of punishment."<sup>184</sup> On the contrary, in a case of disobedience to the existing ecclesiastical rules the believer could be "excluded from participation in any of the ordinary relations of life."<sup>185</sup> Through penitence the Church gives to the sinner the second chance for repentance. It is the opportunity to regain the salvation which could not be repeated.<sup>186</sup>

When public punishment fails to bring a man to his senses, or exclusion from the prayers of the Church to drive him to repentance, it only remains to treat him in accordance with our Lord's directions - as it is written, "If thy brother shall trespass against thee....tell him his fault between thee and him;...if he will not hear thee, take with thee another;" "and if he shall" then "neglect to hear, tell it unto the Church; but if he neglect to hear even the Church, let him be unto thee henceforth as an heathen man, and as a publican." Now all this we have done in the case of this fellow... Henceforth let him be excommunicated.<sup>187</sup>

---

<sup>181</sup> This was discussed previously in chapter 3 of this thesis in a part concerning "the Earthly Church".

<sup>182</sup> *Hom. 8*, PG 31:316A.

<sup>183</sup> *Letter CCXVII.LXXIV*. This is also an allusion to Matt. 23:4.

<sup>184</sup> *Letter CCXVII.LXXIV*.

<sup>185</sup> *Letter CCLXXXVIII*.

<sup>186</sup> St Basil believes that "He who has been corrected for his former sins, and counted worthy of forgiveness, if he sins again prepares for himself a judgment of wrath worse than the former judgment..." See *The Morals XI.2-3*. Clarke, 104.

<sup>187</sup> *Letter CCLXXXVIII*.

This is the worst scenario that could happen to a person because in this situation, according to Basil, he “becomes altogether food for the devil.”<sup>188</sup> In this sense when community excludes somebody from their fellowship this person is excluded at once from the Heavenly Kingdom and transferred to the realm of the devil. On this ground, any penitence could be thought of as means of salvation which the Church is using for her children. Although this looks like a very bleak prospect for the sinners there is always the possibility to receive forgiveness and to become re-established to the community of faithful. The process of restoration and the punishment itself seems a severe task which is really hard to accomplish. On the other hand, these detailed canons show an incredible grace of God and optimism.<sup>189</sup> According to these rules, any sin can be forgiven and a person is able to receive a remission of sin even in a case of murder, adultery or idolatry committed after baptism.<sup>190</sup> St Basil believes that even such sin as the denial of Christ can be forgiven but those who “sinned against the mystery of salvation, ought to weep all *their* life long, and *are* bound to remain in penitence, being deemed worthy of the sacrament in the hour of death, through faith in the mercy of God.”<sup>191</sup>

St Basil believes that Christians should not be indifferent or neutral to the destiny of people who are in danger to see “the awful judgment” in “the terrible day of the retribution of the Lord.” Faithful believers are supposed to support their brothers and sisters in their battle against sinful inclinations. Basil's appeal to the Church is clear: “Let us above all

---

<sup>188</sup> *Letter CCLXXXVIII.*

<sup>189</sup> St Basil does not mention any ecclesiastical censure for lesser sins which the Christian may commit daily and which are hard to avoid. Public penance that he discusses was used by the community for grave sins.

<sup>190</sup> We have to mention that in the last decades of the second century such sins as adultery, homicide and idolatry (or apostasy) were treated in practice as irremissible. See Kelly, *Early Christian Doctrines*, 217. In the light of these facts, Basil's rules do not look so severe but, on contrary, show the mercy to the sinner.

<sup>191</sup> *Letter CCXVII.LXXIII.* We can notice that Basil's attitude toward the apostates who denied Christ is different than toward those who do not want to recognize the Trinity. According to the canons, which St Basil discuss in his letters in case of apostasy there is still possibility of forgiveness provided through the penitential procedure although it is a lifelong punishment. But these groups of people who do not believe in the Trinity because they have denied the divinity of the Son or of the Holy Spirit are not considered Christians at all and penitential rules cannot be applied to them. Therefore, the only way for them to receive salvation is to be re-baptized after a proper confession.



pray that we may do them good, and rescue them from the snare of the evil one.”<sup>192</sup> In this sense, the penitents have to be accompanied by the activity of the church community which should try to preserve them from death eternal. Therefore, in Basil's thought, sin and the following penitence is not the private affair of the person who is guilty but it has an ecclesial aspect. On one hand, the community can experience the wrath of God if it tolerates sin among its members because this sin affects everyone. On the other hand, the role of the Christian community is to protect its members from eternal punishment and not to let them perish in their sins. Hence, the remedy is not a complete separation and exclusion of the sinner from fellowship of the faithful believers but the proper saving actions of the Church with regard to the sinners which lead to a progress in the spiritual condition of the sinners and to the remission of the sins. Consequently, the assigned penitence is the one of these saving acts of the Church that are followed by ecclesial prayers. This involvement of the community and other Christians is an essential part of the penitential process which brings the believer to restoration into full membership and which actually means regaining fellowship with God the Trinity and life eternal.

## **Conclusion to chapter 5**

The discussion of the liturgy and the Christian mysteries reveals to us the inner life of the Christian community which in Basil's thought is closely connected with Trinitarian teaching. In his opinion, the liturgy as a corporate act of worship fulfils a very special function. The reciting of psalms and common prayers, consisting of proper theological statements, leads to the right knowledge of God as the Father, Son and Holy Spirit. Consequently this brings the believers to communion with God whom they may know and worship together as “true worshipers.”

St Basil strongly believes that God is present in His Church during the service and He is involved in the liturgy when the Christians offer to Him their praises and participate in

---

<sup>192</sup> *Letter CCXVII.LXXXIV.*

liturgical singing. According to St Basil, this participation creates a bond of unity between all believers who join their voices with others in the Church. In a sense it reflects the common praise which will be offered to their Creator in Heaven. Therefore, awaiting this eschatological experience Christians receive the opportunity to improve their relationships with the Triune God and with their fellow worshipers here on earth when they are gathered together during the liturgy.

St Basil is convinced that in order to join the future assemble of saints the believers have also to participate in the mysteries that are part of the liturgical practice. Through baptism in the name of the Father, Son and Holy Spirit, Christians after regeneration and illumination receive the opportunity to participate on a regular basis in the second mystery, the Eucharist, and this opens for them a secret “unwritten” tradition. Both these mysteries affirm the right of the believers to join the Church not only here on earth but in the heavenly Kingdom as well.

In order to preserve believers for life eternal and to protect them against sinful inclinations St Basil insists on using penitence. In his opinion it is better for Christian to abstain from the liturgy for a while during this earth life than not to join the Heavenly assembly of saints in the future. Therefore, this kind of discipline supported by ecclesial prayers may serve as an act of restoration of the believer to fellowship with the community and with the Triune God as well.

## Chapter 6

### UNITY OF THE CHURCH AND TRINITARIAN CONFESSION

From the previous chapters we notice that two main streams of thought form the foundation for Basil's actions and his understanding of the Church: the eschatological perspective and his dogmatic teaching which is thoroughly Trinitarian. In Basil's thought, the Church is created by the Triune God in order to bring His children to a life in harmony where all the faithful enjoy heavenly peace and eternal fellowship with each other and their Creator. Accordingly, the eschatological union should be the main goal of every believer in the world. This way of thinking shaped St Basil's position as a Christian leader and made him a strong advocate of the unity of the Church. In his attempts to promote this unity, St Basil has often been perceived as a person of action whose thoughts were directed toward maintaining communication among divided Christians and communities. All his efforts at negotiations with different people and leaders in the Church may be seen in the context of convictions which motivated his actions.<sup>1</sup> In the course of this battle for unity the Trinitarian confession becomes, for St Basil, the criterion for deciding who belongs to fellowship of the Church.

#### **Basil's attitude toward a current situation: the Church and churches**

Throughout his works and especially in the epistles St Basil equally uses both terms “the Church” and “the churches” in regard to the Christian communities in the world.<sup>2</sup>

Although it brings some ambiguity to our reasoning we can understand from the context

---

<sup>1</sup> The intention here is not to attempt to discuss all the events during Basil's episcopate but to highlight some key themes and relationships which may reveal to us the complex context of Basil's thoughts about the Church. For historical background to this correspondence see chapters VII and VIII in Rousseau, *Basil of Caesarea*. See also chapter one in Lietzmann, *The Era of the Church Fathers*. An overview of different theological views of that time see in Atanasij Jevtich, “Between the 'Niceaena' and the 'Easterners': 'Catholic' confession of Saint Basil,” *St Vladimir's Theological Quarterly* 24 (1980): 235-252. For theological background see also chapters 8 and 9 in Lewis Ayres, *Nicaea and its Legacy*, 2004. A very good overview of the existed cultural and political relationships is given in the article of Raymond Van Dam, “Emperor, Bishop and Friends in Late Antique Cappadocia,” *Journal of Theological Studies* 37 (1986), 53-76.

<sup>2</sup> See, for example, Letter CXIII, Letter CCXLIII, Letter CLIV, Letter CLXIV, Letter XXX, Letter CCLXIV.

that for St Basil there is only One true Church of God which is the Mother of all believers, the bride of Christ and His body that makes itself known in the world through the presence of local “members” of this Body which are also called “churches.”<sup>3</sup> This bodily metaphor includes both the congregations and the individual believers who are separated by distances but united by God for the fulfillment of His purpose.

Our Lord Jesus Christ, Who has deigned to style the universal Church of God His body, and has made us individually members one of another, has moreover granted to all of us to live in intimate association with one another, as befits the agreement of the members. Wherefore, although we dwell far away from one another, yet, as regards our close conjunction, we are very near.<sup>4</sup>

In this sense the universal Church of God is spread over different places geographically but it still exists as One entity in the Spirit who enables the communication. It may include a variety of individuals from many locations but as “believers in Christ” they are “one people”, and as “Christ's people” they are “one Church.”<sup>5</sup> St Basil describes this union between Christians as the gift of the Spirit in his epistle to Peter, bishop of Alexandria:

The sight of the eyes brings about bodily friendship, and long companionship strengthens it, but genuine regard is the gift of the Spirit, Who unites what is separated by long distances, and makes friends known to one another, not by bodily qualities, but by the characteristics of the soul.<sup>6</sup>

Basil’s ideal vision is the Church which is united by the Triune God in love. He persistently recalls throughout his writings the good “old times” when “God’s Churches flourished, rooted in faith, united in love, all the members being in harmony, as though in one body.”<sup>7</sup> St Basil believes that fellowship in the Spirit and love among its members should help these local parts to keep in touch with one another. In his thinking the life of each part and all of them together should point toward an eschatological community where

---

<sup>3</sup> The discussion of metaphors “the mother” and “the body” see in the chapter 4 of this thesis.

<sup>4</sup> *Letter CCXLIII.1.*

<sup>5</sup> *Letter CXLI.1.*

<sup>6</sup> *Letter CXXXIII.*

<sup>7</sup> *Letter CLXIV.*

the perfect unity will be attained.<sup>8</sup> “For is there anything more pleasing than the idea of peace?” – Basil asks in his letter, – “Is anything more suitable to the sacred office, or more acceptable to the Lord, than to take measures for effecting it?”<sup>9</sup> Using the same metaphor, which identifies the Church with the perfect body of the Lord, St Basil asserts that “the greatest of goods consists in the knitting together of the members of Christ's body.”<sup>10</sup> Unfortunately, Basil's writings reveal to us the sorrowful reality in which he lives: the Church on earth requires healing and restoration.

We live in days when the overthrow of the Churches seems imminent; of this I have long been cognisant. There is no edification of the Church; no correction of error; no sympathy for the weak; no single defence of sound brethren; no remedy is found either to heal the disease which has already seized us, or as a preventive against that which we expect. Altogether the state of the Church (if I may use a plain figure though it may seem too humble an one) is like an old coat, which is always being torn and can never be restored to its original strength.<sup>11</sup>

The dysfunction of its members caused by the schisms and separations is a sign of a sickness which leads to destruction. Comparing the state of the Christian communities with his own sick body St Basil admits in the letter to Eusebius of Samosata that “the churches are in somewhat the same condition as my body, no good hope shining on them, and their state always changing for the worse.”<sup>12</sup> In many other epistles St Basil often uses the images of a ship or a boat, of continual storms and of potential shipwreck when he appeals for help in the face of heresy and schism.<sup>13</sup> For example, in his letter to the bishops of Italy and Gaul St Basil beseeches them to “reach out a helping hand to the Churches that are being buffeted by the storm” because “if they be abandoned, they suffer

---

<sup>8</sup> *Ps. XLV.4*, PG 29:424A.

<sup>9</sup> *Letter CLVI*.

<sup>10</sup> *Letter CLVI*. See also his *Letter CXIV* where St Basil asserts that “the one great end of all who are really and truly serving the Lord ought to be to bring back to union the Churches now “at sundry times and in divers manners” divided from one another.”

<sup>11</sup> *Letter CXIII*. See similar description of the situation in his *Letter XC.2* to the bishops of the West. We have to mention that St Basil describes the troubles which were found mainly in the Eastern part of the Church. See a short overview of the events in Radde-Gallwitz, *Basil of Caesarea*, 135-137.

<sup>12</sup> *Letter XXX*.

<sup>13</sup> See, for example, *Letter LXXXI*, *Letter LXXXII*, *Letter XC*, *Letter XCI*, *Letter CLXI*, *Letter CCX*.

complete shipwreck of the faith.”<sup>14</sup> The most impressive metaphor of a naval battle which describes the present condition of the Church is given in Basil's treatise *On the Holy Spirit*. It is fought by people who “cherish a deadly hate against one another” because of old quarrels and lack of love:

Look, I beg you, at the picture thus raised before your eyes. See the rival fleets rushing in dread array to the attack. With a burst of uncontrollable fury they engage and fight it out. Fancy, if you like, the ships driven to and fro by a raging tempest, while thick darkness falls from the clouds and blackens all the scenes so that watchwords are indistinguishable in the confusion, and all distinction between friend and foe is lost. To fill up the details of the imaginary picture, suppose the sea swollen with billows and whirled up from the deep, while a vehement torrent of rain pours down from the clouds and the terrible waves rise high. From every quarter of heaven the winds beat upon one point, where both the fleets are dashed one against the other.<sup>15</sup>

Basil continues and gives more details about the state of the battle: the disorder and confusion is tremendous, friends no longer recognize friends, some combatants become traitors and others desert in the midst of the fight. Most of them are confused because of howling winds and different kind of noises from crashing vessels, from boiling surf, and from the yells of the combatants who do not allow them to hear a word from admiral or pilot. The tragedy is that many of the participants do not pay attention to the fact that while they fight for power in the Church “their ship is actually settling down into the deep.”<sup>16</sup>

In this passage St Basil mentions one of the main reasons for divisions and problems in the Church: “Jealousy of authority and the lust of individual mastery splits the sailors into parties which deal mutual death to one another... the men are all smitten with the incurable plague of mad love of glory.”<sup>17</sup> He explains later on in the same chapter that this kind of people “reject the government of the Holy Spirit and divide the chief dignities of the Churches.”<sup>18</sup> Developing this idea in one of his letters St Basil comes to the conclusion that divisions and fights among Christian communities lead to separation of these churches

---

<sup>14</sup> *Letter CCXLIII.*

<sup>15</sup> *HS XXX.76.*

<sup>16</sup> *HS XXX.76.*

<sup>17</sup> *HS XXX.76.*

<sup>18</sup> *HS XXX.77.*

from God Himself. Basil cannot accept the situation and asks other faithful believers:

“...pray to the Lord yourself, and join all Christ’s noble athletes with you in prayer for the Churches, to the end that... *God may be reconciled* to his own Churches and restore them to their ancient peace.”<sup>19</sup> This reconciliation would only happen among the believers if they communicate with each other as the servants of one God and the Ruler of the Church.

A similar way of thinking may be found in Basil's work *On the Judgment of God* where the division in the Church is considered as a sign that God does not rule the churches. Comparing the history of Israel from the book of Judges to the present day divisions St Basil brings his readers to the idea that all these things happen in the Church “because of neglect of the one great and only King and God of all.”<sup>20</sup> He also believes that such discord and quarreling among the members of the Church is the result of people turning away from God when leaders of the Church abandon the teachings of the Lord and claiming to themselves authority in dealing with certain questions, making their own private rules, “and wishing to rule over against the Lord rather than be ruled by Him.”<sup>21</sup> Further on, St Basil uses an example of a swarm of bees who “according to the law of their nature” follow “their king in good order.”<sup>22</sup> This illustrates his point that disagreements and divisions show a lack of obedience to a common head. He forms the conclusion:

For if those who obey one command and have one king are characterised by good order and agreement, then all discord and divisions is a sign that there is no one to rule. In the same fashion such disagreement as regards both the commandments of the Lord and one another, if found in our midst, lays us open to accusation that we have either deserted our true King... or else have denied Him.<sup>23</sup>

St Basil thinks all the examples of harmony, even among the animals, are put forth by God as instructions and warnings and in the “dreadful day of judgment they will be brought forward by Him unto the shame and condemnation of those who have not profited

---

<sup>19</sup> *Letter CLXIV*. The emphasis is added.

<sup>20</sup> *De Jud.*, Clarke, 78.

<sup>21</sup> *De Jud.*, Clarke, 78.

<sup>22</sup> *De Jud.*, Clarke, 78.

<sup>23</sup> *De Jud.*, Clarke, 78-79.

by the instruction.”<sup>24</sup> This statement is followed by a long excursus into the definition of sin as disobedience but previously Basil makes it very clear that the mutual dissensions in the Church is disobedience to God. He is convinced that the discord is dangerous and fatal for the Church. Therefore, there is “the necessity of harmony on the part of the whole Church of God together, according to the will of Christ in the Holy Spirit.”<sup>25</sup> His vision of the Church is obviously Trinitarian in this sentence which underlines his doctrinal position one more time.

The unity of the Church for Basil, first of all, means “the communion of faith”<sup>26</sup> which is connected with “abiding in the sound and unperturbed doctrine.”<sup>27</sup> In Basil's opinion, the Trinitarian confession is fundamental to the identity of Christians and he makes it a criterion for the authenticity of faith.<sup>28</sup> He emphasizes that heretics do not belong to the Church due to “their disagreement concerning the actual faith in God”<sup>29</sup> implying that they do not accept all the Persons of the Trinity on equal basis. On the contrary, Basil thinks that some of schismatics may still be considered as part of the Church because the reason for their separation is not the rejection of proper doctrines but the sinful behaviour of the local leaders.<sup>30</sup> Hence, irreconcilable disunity among the believers is caused mostly by dogmatic disagreements.<sup>31</sup> He strongly believes that people who “alter the doctrine of the Lord, not being rightly instructed in the word” do not belong to the community but they “mix themselves with the sound body of the Church” in order “to spread their pernicious errors secretly among purer souls.”<sup>32</sup> They are not the members of the Body but they only pretend to be such. In reality these people, actually, destroy the unity of the Church

---

<sup>24</sup> *De Jud.*, Wagner, 40.

<sup>25</sup> *De Jud.*, Clarke, 81.

<sup>26</sup> *Letter CXXXIII.*

<sup>27</sup> See *Letter CCLI.4.*

<sup>28</sup> See, for example, *Letter CXXV*, which Eustathius of Sebaste was to sign. See also *De Fide*, Clarke, 90, 95-96 where Basil calls Trinitarian teaching “the saving confession.”

<sup>29</sup> *Letter CLXXXVIII.*

<sup>30</sup> *Letter CLXXXVIII.*

<sup>31</sup> See also *Letter CXCI* where Basil affirms that “since agreement in the faith is established among us, there is nothing further to prevent our being one body and one spirit.”

<sup>32</sup> *Hex.V.5.* See similar thinking in *De Fide*, Clarke, 97-98 where Basil says that such “false prophets” want to “steal away the simple-minded.”



because they were “corrupted by the teaching of the evil one.”<sup>33</sup> Often the separations happened when these kinds of teachers got power in the communities. According to St Basil, the consequences of the doctrinal divisions are damaging:

The doctrines of the Fathers are despised; apostolic traditions are set at nought; the devices of innovators are in vogue in the Churches; now men are rather contrivers of cunning systems than theologians; the wisdom of this world wins the highest prizes and has rejected the glory of the cross. Shepherds are banished, and in their places are introduced grievous wolves hurrying the flock of Christ. Houses of prayer have none to assemble in them; desert places are full of lamenting crowds.<sup>34</sup>

St Basil is concerned even more with the future of the Church. If the older believers lament experiencing this discord they at least know the past which was filled with love and agreement. The younger generation is the one for whom we should feel sorrow because “they do not know of what they have been deprived.”<sup>35</sup> Basil admits that in the beginning he “reckoned silence more profitable than speech” in this situation but then he “was drawn in the other direction by love, which ‘seeketh not her own,’ and desires to overcome every difficulty put in her way by time and circumstance.”<sup>36</sup> Therefore, peace among Christians and reconciliation of all separated groups of believers becomes one of the main goals in his life.<sup>37</sup> Using an example of “the children in Babylon” from the book of Daniel St Basil explains that he feels obligated “to support the cause of true religion.”<sup>38</sup> For this reason, he believes he needs help from other believers that they may be together with one another and proclaim the truth with all the boldness.

Evidently, there should be criteria of orthodoxy which can help draw a line between the groups with the right doctrine and heretics. In several of his epistles Basil mentions the

---

<sup>33</sup> *Hex. 5.5*. See similar idea in Basil's homily *Ps. XLVIII*, Way, 323. The one who “has given his attention to deprived doctrines” and “has perverted the meaning in the Scripture” does not live in the Church but he “hews out in the rock a sepulchre for himself.”

<sup>34</sup> *Letter XC.2*.

<sup>35</sup> *Letter XC.2*.

<sup>36</sup> *HS XXX.78*. Similar notion can be found in his *Letter CCXLIV.8* where Basil shares that he was restored after “a very violent fever” and he became aware that the only reason for recovery was the wish of the Lord to let him see “the Churches at rest after the storm which they had previously suffered.” This meant for him that God expects him to take part in the reconciliation process.

<sup>37</sup> See *Letter CXXVIII.1*. As Basil writes in this epistle, “I have been unable to give any adequate and practical proof of my earnest desire to pacify the Churches of the Lord. But in my heart I affirm that I have so great a longing that I would gladly give up even my life, if thereby the flame of hatred, kindled by the evil one, could be put out.” See also his *Letter CXIV*.

<sup>38</sup> *HS XXX.79*.

*Nicene Creed* as such criterion.<sup>39</sup> He believes that this creed, which affirms the Trinity, can serve as a tool which not only helps to check the orthodoxy of a particular community or a leader but it also, in case of heterodoxy, gives them a chance to change their beliefs and to join the Church.

Both men whose minds have been preoccupied by a heterodox creed and now wish to change over to the congregation of the orthodox, and also those who are now for the first time desirous of being instructed in the doctrine of truth, must be taught the creed drawn up by the blessed fathers in the Council which met at Nicaea. The same training would also be exceedingly useful in the case of all who are under suspicion of being in a state of hostility to sound doctrine, and who by ingenious and plausible excuses keep the depravity of their sentiments out of view. For these too this creed is all that is needed. They will either get cured of their concealed unsoundness, or, by continuing to keep it concealed, will themselves bear the load of the sentence due to their dishonesty.<sup>40</sup>

In this epistle St Basil adds some explanations to the statements of the *Creed* which serve the following functions: “some for the correction of what had been corrupted, some as a precaution against errors expected to arise.”<sup>41</sup> The goal of St Basil is not to accuse those believers who do not confess the proper doctrine and cut them off from the Church but to allow them to admit their mistakes and bring them back into the communion of the faithful. “Our duty,” – Basil says, – “rather to have regard to them in accordance with the old law of love, and to write to them with one consent, giving them all exhortation with pity, and to propose to them the faith of the fathers, and invite them to union.”<sup>42</sup> From all these actions made on the behalf of the Church two results are expected: if the heretics change their opinion then reconciliation may happen and if they reject fellowship and the proper faith then they will be recognized as “the real authors of the war.”<sup>43</sup> From his side St Basil is open to having close communion with as many people as possible because he believes that “nothing is so characteristically Christian as being a peacemaker.”<sup>44</sup> The only

---

<sup>39</sup> Letter CXIII, Letter CXIV, Letter CXXV, Letter CXL, Letter CLIX, Letter CCLI, Letter CCIV.6.

<sup>40</sup> Letter CXXV.1.

<sup>41</sup> Letter CXXV.3.

<sup>42</sup> Letter CXXVIII.3.

<sup>43</sup> Letter CXXVIII.3.

<sup>44</sup> Letter CXIV.

requirement which he thinks is necessary for maintaining the fellowship in the Church is the acceptance and confirmation of the *Nicene Creed*.

Let us then seek no more than this, but propose to all the brethren, who are willing to join us, the Nicene Creed. If they assent to that, let us further require that the Holy Ghost ought not to be called a creature, nor any of those who say so be received into communion. I do not think that we ought to insist upon anything beyond this.<sup>45</sup>

St Basil is convinced that by deeper communication and mutual experience the believers will be able to learn other things as well because the Lord “will grant it.”<sup>46</sup> This means that all these things which God requires them to know the Christians can acquire if they live in peace and listen to each other. The best example of such relationships in the Church for St Basil is from the ancient times

...when the sufferers from unsound disputation were few, and all lived in peace, "workmen" obeying the commandments and not "needing to be ashamed," serving the Lord with simple and clear confession, and keeping plain and inviolate their faith in Father, Son and Holy Ghost.<sup>47</sup>

According to Basil's thinking, this peace, obedience and a “plain” Trinitarian confession create a foundation for unity. Therefore, he thinks that the restoration of these factors will bring the healing of the Church. His vision for the future is to govern the churches through mutual accommodation by “the ancient kind of love, receiving as our own members brothers coming from the other side, sending as to our kin, and in turn receiving as from our own kin.”<sup>48</sup> St Basil believes that this used to be “the boast of the Church” in the past. He also convinced that this fellowship can be re-established once again through the meetings and dialogues with “the men of like mind” from different communities who are willing to restore the Church and renew its condition.<sup>49</sup>

---

<sup>45</sup> *Letter CXIII*. Basil adds similar explanations about the Holy Spirit in his *Letter CXXV*.

<sup>46</sup> *Letter CXIII*.

<sup>47</sup> *Letter CLXXII*.

<sup>48</sup> *Letter CXCI*.

<sup>49</sup> *Letter CXCI*.

## Authority in the Church: God and humans

One of Basil's principles for unity in the Church is based on his perception of the existing essential relationships of the Triune God. He calls the Christians to look at the divine Persons who are perfectly united in will and knowledge and try to keep the same kind of fellowship among believers for the well being of the Church. St Basil uses the immanent life of the Triune God, the inner order in which God lives and which was revealed to humanity as the best example that believers should follow.

Again, when the only begotten Son of God, our Lord and God Jesus Christ, through Whom all things were made, Himself cries: "I am come down from heaven, not to do mine own will, but the will of the Father that sent me," and "I do nothing of myself," and "I have receive a commandment, what I should say and what I should speak" – and when again the Holy Spirit distributes great and marvellous gifts and works all things in all men, and speaks nothing of Himself, but whatever things He hears from the Lord that He speaks, - how it is much more necessary that that the whole Church of God should strive earnestly to keep the unity of the spirit in the bond of peace.<sup>50</sup>

Therefore, St Basil is convinced that the Trinitarian concordance of the divine will serves as a model for all Christian communities. At the same time, in his writings he perceives the Church as One Body that consists of many members around the world and in which unity is grounded in the economy of the Trinity.<sup>51</sup> This means that on one hand, St Basil is totally aware that God Himself creates the Church and sustains its unity. He has no doubt that the restoration of "vigorous life" and peace in the Church is a "heavenly and saving gift of Christ."<sup>52</sup> On the other hand, he believes that the human labour is necessary to reconcile all Christians with each other and "to renew laws of ancient love."<sup>53</sup>

Consequently, he puts a lot of effort into conversations with the leaders of the Church

---

<sup>50</sup> *De Jud.*, Clarke, 81. See also Basil's explanation of cooperation of divine Persons in *HS XVI.38*; see *HS XVIII.46-47* for the concept of *koinonia* inside the Trinity. See *De Fide*, Clarke, 96.

The idea that St Basil applied inter-Trinitarian relations to the relationship of Christians to each other is discussed by William G. Rusch in his article *Basil the Great views of the unity of the Church*. Analyzing Basil's vocabulary which he uses for inter-Trinitarian communion and for fellowship of believers he argues that "Basil is responsible for a decisive step of grounding Christian unity in the unity of the Triune God." See William G. Rusch, "Basil the Great views of the unity of the Church", *Mid-Stream*, 35 (1996): 287.

<sup>51</sup> This question was detailed in chapter 2.

<sup>52</sup> *Letter LXX*. See also *Letter CCLXIV* where Basil asserts that God Himself will bestow peace on the Church.

<sup>53</sup> *Letter LXX*.

through the exchange of letters and visits. His main goal is to make Christians keep the sound faith, to think together with each other or to change their opinion and attitude in order to constitute one body. As Basil acknowledges, “For peace's sake there is no trouble that I will not undertake, no act, no word of humility that I will shrink from; I will reckon no length of journey, I will undergo any inconvenience, if only I may be rewarded by being able to make peace.”<sup>54</sup>

From Basil's epistles we notice that he does not believe in the authority of one superior bishop in the Church but rather he facilitates unity communicating with many bishops and leaders.<sup>55</sup> Although St Basil treats some of them with more respect and honour due to their influence on other Christians and their role in the Church,<sup>56</sup> he still emphasizes throughout his works that the true bishop and the real Head of the Church is Christ Himself.<sup>57</sup> It should be observed, however, that St Basil believes in the hierarchy in the Church and he highly estimates the role of local clergy and the bishops.<sup>58</sup> In his vision they are expected to function “like the head at the top” and like “the eyes” which exercise their own “watchful forethought” for local people in order that “the hands” and “the feet” may do their work.<sup>59</sup> This implies that the ministers<sup>60</sup> should fulfill their responsibilities and do not

---

<sup>54</sup> Letter XC VII.

<sup>55</sup> Several scholars agree on this issue. See, for example, Fouyas, *St Basil and the Roman See*, 5. See also Vasily Krivoshein, *Ekklesiologia sv. Vasiliya Velikogo*. See similar opinion of Lukas Vischer in chapter 3 “Die Kirche” of his book: Vischer, *Basilus der Große*, 52-72. In Basil's view all bishops are successors of the Apostles. See, for example, Letter CXC VII.1 where he explains to Ambrose, bishop of Milan, that it is the Lord Himself transferred him “from the judges of the earth to the throne of the Apostles.”

<sup>56</sup> Of course, St Basil regards some bishops as the first in honour: such as the bishop of Alexandria Athanasius (see Letter LXVI and Letter LXXX). For example, Basil believes that Athanasius is able to be “a Samuel to the Churches” and to restore strength to the Church of Antioch by concord “being able to control some” and “to reduce others to silence”. See Letter LXVI. Also in another epistle he calls him “blessed Father Athanasius” and admits that he considers himself “bound to follow the high authority of such a man.” See Letter CCIV.6-7. Basil's relationships with the influential bishop of Rome Damasus are rather complicated (Basil wrote to him one epistle [Letter LXX] but even this one is written without address). On this issue see a very helpful article by Revd Justin Taylor, “St Basil the Great and Pope St Damasus,” *Downside Review* 91 (1973): 186-203. See also the historical and theological review of all relationships at that time in Behr, *The Nicene Faith*, 104-117.

<sup>57</sup> See Letter L; HS V.9; *The Morals* LXXX.4; Ps. XLIV.5; PG 29:397CD.

<sup>58</sup> Letter CCXXII, Letter CCXXVII.

<sup>59</sup> Letter CCXXII. See also *The Morals* LXXX.15. Clarke, 128.

<sup>60</sup> Fedwick noticed in his book that the most common word in Basil's terminology for the leader of the church is προεστώς. He also argues that this term is flexible and maybe used in a different context.

“exalt themselves” over their people but “rather use *their* rank as an opportunity for practicing humility toward them.”<sup>61</sup> This is possible on the ground that the aim of the leader is “to bring all to a perfect man, to the measure of the stature of the fullness of Christ.”<sup>62</sup> Consequently, the mature Christians will respect their clergy and through this kind of relationship the proper ecclesial order and authority will be kept.

According to Basil's thinking, the authority of the bishop, or a Christian leader comes from God and it is not simply a human decision but “the ordinance of God.”<sup>63</sup> He is convinced that the appointments in the Church and all the things concerning the leadership happen with the help of the Holy Spirit. St Basil expresses this belief in his epistle to the clergy of Colonia:

Do not look at this as merely of man's ordaining, nor as having been originated by the calculations of men who regard earthly things. Believe that those to whom the anxious care of the Churches belongs have acted, as they have, with the aid of the Holy Spirit; impress this inception of the proceedings on your hearts and do your best to perfect it.<sup>64</sup>

It seems that people in the church choose who will be a new minister but “the inception” of their decision is in the Spirit. In this sense Basil's concept of ecclesial administration is closely related to the idea of distribution of spiritual gifts among the members of Christ's Body. He strongly believes that the ordering of the Church is effected through the Holy Spirit because He gives in the Church “first Apostles, secondarily prophets, thirdly teachers...” and “this order is ordained in accordance with the division of the gifts that are of the Spirit.”<sup>65</sup> It is evident from other epistles that St Basil has no doubt that this is God who gives the ministers to believers in their communities. For example, he is anxious to persuade his friend, the bishop of Iconium, that God Himself “from age to

---

The best translation of προεστώς is 'leader who cares' or 'leader in the care of others'. See Fedwick, *The Church*, 46-47.

<sup>61</sup> *The Morals LXX. 24.* Clarke, 123. In *The Morals* St Basil usually reinforce his point with the gospel quotes. In this case he uses Matt. 24:45-50 and Jn. 13:13-14 to support the idea of a minister as a faithful servant to his people.

<sup>62</sup> *The Morals LXX.31,* Clarke, 123.

<sup>63</sup> *Letter CCXXVII.* See also *Letter CXCVII* where Basil asserts that it is God who “in every generation selects those who are well-pleasing to Him” and makes them His leaders.

<sup>64</sup> *Letter CCXXVII.*

<sup>65</sup> *HS XVI.39.* See also *The Morals LX.1,* Clarke, 117.

age chooses them that please Him, distinguishes vessels of election, and uses them for the ministry of the Saints.”<sup>66</sup> Also in his consolatory letter to the church of Neocaesarea he reminds his readers that the Lord had always been faithful and from the time of Gregory, “the great champion” of their church, He set over them one “wakeful” bishop after another.<sup>67</sup> They have no need “to despair” of the next one because, Basil affirms, “the Lord knows who are His” and “He may bring into our midst those for whom peradventure we are not looking.”<sup>68</sup> However, St Basil does not want Christians to be careless and unthoughtful. In a similar situation, due to death of the bishop, he calls the Church of Parnassus to raise themselves to “the necessary management of the Church” that “the holy God may give heed to His own little flock,” and may grant them “a shepherd in accordance with His own will.”<sup>69</sup> We are led therefore to the conviction that the ultimate authority in the church always belongs to God as also revealed in the titles of Christ and the work of the Spirit.<sup>70</sup> At the same time, the ministers in the church are endowed with power in order to fulfill “the special and chief work.”<sup>71</sup> God gives them the authority to teach those entrusted to them “all that is ordered by the Lord in the Gospel and through His apostles, and whatsoever is consistent with this.”<sup>72</sup>

Once again we notice how Basil shows the cooperation of divine and human activity in the Church. Previously, we have seen that in the mystery of baptism and now we can observe a similar pattern of thinking in the process of ordination for ministry. St Basil does not call it mystery but he conveys the idea that God has chosen the leaders whom the church, as a community of the faithful, ordains for the special task using prescribed regulations. First, he leads his readers to a conviction that God provides people with

---

<sup>66</sup> *Letter CLXI.1.* This epistle was written on the consecration of a new bishop who previously was not confident in his ability to minister.

<sup>67</sup> *Letter XXVIII.2.*

<sup>68</sup> *Letter XXVIII.2.*

<sup>69</sup> *Letter LXII.*

<sup>70</sup> As we mentioned earlier Christ is called “the true bishop” and “the head of the church.” The Spirit is ordering the church and distributes the gifts.

<sup>71</sup> *The Morals LXX.11.* Clarke, 121.

<sup>72</sup> *The Morals LXX. 6.* Clarke, 121.

talents and ability to rule and guide the congregation.<sup>73</sup> Then St Basil asserts that Christians should check the qualities and distinctive characteristics of those who will be entrusted with the authority in the Church before the rights and obligations are imposed on them. Thereby, God's intentions should be confirmed by the human actions. St Basil reminds his Chorepiscopi<sup>74</sup>:

According to the ancient custom observed in the Churches of God, ministers in the Church were received after careful examination; the whole of their life was investigated; an enquiry was made as to their being neither railers nor drunkards, not quick to quarrel, keeping their youth in subjection, so as to be able to maintain "the holiness without which no man shall see the Lord." This examination was made by presbyters and deacons living with them. Then they brought them to the Chorepiscopi; and the Chorepiscopi, after receiving the suffrages of the witnesses as to the truth and giving information to the Bishop, so admitted the minister to the sacerdotal order.<sup>75</sup>

The last words should not go unnoticed: the term "sacerdotal order"<sup>76</sup> tells us that this person from now on is required to play a special role in God's plans for the community. Among many responsibilities of the leaders the most important one is "to bring others to the peace that is in Christ."<sup>77</sup> This peace should be a result of proper use of spiritual gifts which should lead to harmonious life "with one another in the love of Christ."<sup>78</sup>

### ***Responsibilities of God's fellow servants and peace in a local community***

The characteristics and responsibilities of the Church leaders and the bishop in particular can be found in many of Basil's works. Very precisely they are described in *The Morals* where St Basil explains how Christians are supposed to function as a community.<sup>79</sup>

---

<sup>73</sup> This is exactly the order in which the Rules in his *The Morals* are written: first the Rule LX.1 about the gifts and then the Rule LXX.2 about the ordination.

<sup>74</sup> Chorepiscopi (Χωρεπίσκοπος) means bishops of smaller cities which were located near the capital of province (for example, Caesarea).

<sup>75</sup> *Letter LIV*. St Basil believes that the Christians should not be "easy-going as regards ordinations" and they should not "approach them without circumspection." See *The Morals LXX.2*. Clarke, 120. St Basil is also convinced that the ordination can be done only in the Church and by the Church. On the contrary, the gatherings held by disorderly presbyters or bishops or by uninstructed laymen should be called "unlawful congregations." *Letter CLXXXVIII.1*.

<sup>76</sup> The Greek: τῷ ἁγίῳ τῶν ἱερατικῶν. It can be also translated as "the priestly order." As Deferrari noticed that in the Latin Church the priesthood (including bishops), diaconate, and subdiaconate are called "sacred" orders because "they have immediate reference to what is consecrated." See *Letter LIV*. Deferrari, 1:342-343.

<sup>77</sup> *The Morals L.1*, Clarke, 114.

<sup>78</sup> *The Morals LX.1*, Clarke, 117.

<sup>79</sup> See, for example, *Letter LXXI*, Ps. XXVIII.2, *Letter CCXLVI*, *The Morals LX-LXXX*.



Showing the roles of the ministers he often supports his statements with the passages from the Scripture.<sup>80</sup> In this way St Basil provides a biblical framework for the key aspects of his understanding of the relationships between the clergy and the laity. Many of these verses which he chooses remind the ministers of servant leadership which should be reflected in their lives.<sup>81</sup> As “shepherds” they are expected to lay down their lives for their people if it helps to “impart to them the gospel of God.”<sup>82</sup> Clarifying the meaning of the statement Basil adds that as “fathers and nurses” ministers in the community should be willing to render to people not only the gospel but “even their own souls.”<sup>83</sup> As “doctors” they are called to heal the diseases of their souls and to win for them health in Christ.<sup>84</sup> They are supposed to be “planters of God's branches” and “builders of God's temple” but all these actions must be done in “the great affection of their love in Christ.”<sup>85</sup> In Basil's view, if the bishop wants his Church to bloom like “a vine with good works” he should be like “a wise husbandman and good servant giving meat in due season to his fellow-servants.”<sup>86</sup> The ministers of God should do their work as “wise and trusty stewards.”<sup>87</sup>

Although St Basil insists that the leaders should act more like servants in order to provide care and support for their people he believes in the necessity of hierarchy in the church. Throughout his writings he uses many different metaphors to demonstrate the importance of the bishops for the local communities. In the homily on *Psalms XXVIII* Basil compares them with a ram, “an animal capable of leading, one which guides the sheep to nourishing pastures and refreshing waters.”<sup>88</sup> He asserts that such are those

...who are set over the flock of Christ, since they lead them forth to the flowery and fragrant nourishment of spiritual doctrine, water them with living water, the gift of the

---

<sup>80</sup> *The Morals* are structured this way when Basil reflects on various passages of the Scriptures and derives from them principles which he applies to the duties of clergy and laity.

<sup>81</sup> See, for example, scriptural support for the rule *LXX.24* in *The Morals*.

<sup>82</sup> *The Morals LXXX.16*. Clarke, 129.

<sup>83</sup> *The Morals LXXX.18*. Clarke, 129.

<sup>84</sup> *The Morals LXXX.17*. Clarke, 129.

<sup>85</sup> *The Morals LXXX.20, 21, 18*. Clarke, 129.

<sup>86</sup> *Letter CLXI.2*.

<sup>87</sup> *Letter CLXI.2*.

<sup>88</sup> *Ps. XXVIII.1*. Way, 195.

Spirit, raise them up and nourish them to produce fruit, but guide them to rest and to safety from those who lay snares for them.<sup>89</sup>

St Basil is convinced that the leaders are “entrusted with the preaching of the Gospel” and in this sense they are the guarantors of the teaching of the right doctrine.<sup>90</sup> As “an eye in a body” they are able “to discern between good and evil” and guide the members of Christ.<sup>91</sup> In his epistle to Amphilochius, the bishop of Iconium, he expresses the idea that a good bishop as “a skilful pilot” who may “rise in mind above every wave lifted by heretical blasts” and “keep the boat from being whelmed by the salt and bitter billows of false doctrine.”<sup>92</sup> In Basil's opinion the ability to teach and “rightly handle the word of truth” is so significant that believers must receive these kinds of leaders as “if they were the Lord.”<sup>93</sup> Reinforcing the central concern of the statement he explains in the next rule that “those who do not obey the envoys of the Lord dishonour not only them but also Him Who sent them.”<sup>94</sup> Interestingly enough, at the same time he urges the hearers to test what their teachers say.<sup>95</sup> St Basil thinks that the believers who were already instructed in the Scriptures should “receive what agrees with the Scriptures and reject what disagrees” and decline dealings with those who persist in the wrong teaching.<sup>96</sup> Therefore, a bishop in the community has the authority to represent Christ as long as he faithfully bears witness to Him and to His Gospel.

In order to discern whether their bishop is trustworthy or not St Basil recommends to those Christians who have “little knowledge of Scripture” to pay attention to “the stamp of sanctity in the fruits of the Spirit” of the leader.<sup>97</sup> They are supposed to receive only those ministers who show these “fruits” but reject those who do not. This means that the bishop

---

<sup>89</sup> *Ps. XXVIII.1.* Way, 195.

<sup>90</sup> *The Morals LXX.1* and *LXX.5.* Clarke, 120-121.

<sup>91</sup> *The Morals LXXX.15.*

<sup>92</sup> *Letter CLXI.2.*

<sup>93</sup> *The Morals LXXII.3.* Clarke, 125.

<sup>94</sup> *The Morals LXXII.4.* Clarke, 125.

<sup>95</sup> *The Morals LXXII.1.* Clarke, 124.

<sup>96</sup> *The Morals LXXII.1.* See also the similar idea in *The Morals LXX.37* where Basil asserts that “he who is set over the word” must be judged by “the very people who are entrusted to him.” Clarke, 124.

<sup>97</sup> *The Morals LXXII.2.* Clarke, 125.

has to show by deeds whatever he teaches by words. St Basil insists in his rules that the minister “should make himself an example to others of every good thing, practising first what he is teaching”<sup>98</sup> because it is “unlawful to put constraint upon others to do what man has not done himself.”<sup>99</sup> One of the best examples of the fruits of the Spirit which should be present in the life of the bishop we can find in Basil's description of Dianius. St Basil admits that he counted him “among the most illustrious in virtue.”<sup>100</sup> From his childhood he used to look up to “the man as majestic in appearance, magnificent, and possessing great sanctity of aspect.”<sup>101</sup> After reaching the age of reason, St Basil testifies, he rejoiced in his company

...coming to learn the simplicity, nobility, and generosity of his character, and all the other qualities peculiar to the man — his gentleness of soul, his lofty spirit combined with mildness, his decorum, his control of temper, and his cheerfulness and affability mingled with dignity.<sup>102</sup>

Drawing the portraits of exemplary bishops St Basil often lists the characteristics which may qualify them as the best ministers and so can be practised by others. About Musonius he writes that this bishop was “a pillar and support of the truth; a stay of the faith of Christ; a protector of his friends; a stout foe of his opponents; a guardian of the principles of his fathers; an enemy of innovation; exhibiting in himself the ancient fashion of the Church.”<sup>103</sup>

In Basil's understanding the leader entrusted with the authority from God should make his life “a shining model for the observance of every commandment of the Lord,” so that people under his guidance could not find any excuses to think that the Lord's commands

---

<sup>98</sup> *The Morals LXX.10*. Clarke, 121. See also *Letter CCXLVI*.

<sup>99</sup> *The Morals LXX.9*. Clarke, 121.

<sup>100</sup> *Letter LI*. Deferrari, 1: 325. Another description of an exemplary minister can be found in the *Letter LXXXI* where Basil introduces a presbyter of the Church saying that he is a leader “of steadfast character, skilled in canons, accurate in the faith, who has lived up to this time in continence and ascetic discipline,” “a man of poverty,” who “by the labour of his hands gets a living with the brethren who dwell with him.”

<sup>101</sup> *Letter LI*. Deferrari, 1: 325.

<sup>102</sup> *Letter LI*. Deferrari, 1: 325.

<sup>103</sup> *Letter XXVIII.1*.

are impossible to fulfil.<sup>104</sup> In this sense, a spiritual growth of lay people and their obedience to a minister flows from his ability to live out what he teaches. So, then, Basil asserts, “the example of his actions may afford more effective instruction than any words.”<sup>105</sup> What is really required from a bishop is to embody the Gospel in his life that others can learn and imitate. As Basil so eloquently argues,

If, indeed, the goal of Christianity is the imitation of Christ according to the measure of His Incarnation, insofar as is conformable with the vocation of each individual, they who are entrusted with the guidance of many others are obliged to animate those still weaker than themselves, by their assistance, to the imitation of Christ, as the blessed Paul says: 'Be ye followers of me, as I also am of Christ.'<sup>106</sup>

This embodiment of Christ's teaching in the life of the minister brings him to a position when he is able to establish the relationships in the Church which are usually maintained in a good family or among close friends. As Basil writes to the Neocaesareans on the death of their bishop: “your boys have lost a father, your elders a brother, your nobles one first among them, your people a champion, your poor a supporter.”<sup>107</sup> That expresses another conviction of St Basil concerning the role of a bishop in the Church. He is expected to create “a bond of peace” between his people and encourage their common desire to serve God that the Church “may rest firm and unshaken.”<sup>108</sup> When Basil shares his high opinion of Athanasius of Ancyra he asserts that this bishop was “in truth a pillar and foundation of the Church.”<sup>109</sup> “The limbs of the Church,” he says, “knitted together by his superintendence as by a soul, and joined into a union of sympathy and true fellowship, are not only steadfastly preserved by the bond of peace for the spiritual communion, but will also be preserved for ever.”<sup>110</sup> Therefore, the peace and unity in the Church has eternal consequences and the responsibility to facilitate and maintain this unity is placed on the bishop and other ministers. Following the example of Christ, with the help

---

<sup>104</sup> *LR 43. Wagner, 319.*

<sup>105</sup> *LR 43. Wagner, 319.*

<sup>106</sup> *LR 43. Wagner, 319.*

<sup>107</sup> *Letter XXVIII.2.*

<sup>108</sup> *Letter XXIX. Deferrari, 1: 173.*

<sup>109</sup> *Letter XXIX. Deferrari, 1: 173.*

<sup>110</sup> *Letter XXIX. Deferrari, 1: 173.*

of the Holy Spirit, they are supposed to serve their people in order that the whole community should grow toward Christlikeness and enjoy peace and relationships of love.

### ***The brotherly union of all bishops in the Church***

St Basil's passionate longing for Church unity made him write letters to many people from different geographical locations.<sup>111</sup> This correspondence is a great evidence of his strong commitment to the idea that the Church should be restored to a previous condition when though the districts “were divided in position, yet in mind they were one, and were governed by one sentiment.”<sup>112</sup> St Basil is convinced that communication between bishops as heads of the local communities may help to find solutions to many problems and create “the union effected by love.”<sup>113</sup> In the epistles he often recalls the good old times and uses this as an example which his contemporaries should follow. “Intercourse of the people was frequent, Basil says, frequent the visits of the clergy; the pastors, too, had such mutual affection, that each used the other as teacher and guide in things pertaining to the Lord.”<sup>114</sup> In Basil's view, this mutual love of bishops is one of the main principles that form the foundation for unity in the church.<sup>115</sup>

A very good example of this way of thinking can be found in his letter to the bishops of the sea coast of Pontus. Following the Bible, he reminds them of the words of Christ that people will know His disciples if they love each other.<sup>116</sup> Then he conveys the idea that peace is the farewell gift of the Lord to the believers. Therefore, Basil admits, “I cannot persuade myself that without love to others, and without, as far as rests with me,

---

<sup>111</sup> St Basil wrote the letters to different categories of people and on various occasions. Probably not all of his letters were preserved but he mentions that he still communicates with “the multitude of bishops” and he names the locations: “ Pisidians, Lycaonians, Isaurians, Phrygians of both provinces, Armenians your neighbours, Macedonians, Achaeans, Illyrians, Gauls, Spaniards, the whole of Italy, Sicilians, Africans, the healthy part of Egypt, whatever is left of Syria.” See *Letter CCIV.7*.

<sup>112</sup> *Letter CCIV.7*.

<sup>113</sup> *Letter LXX*. See the same notion in Vischer, *Basilius der Große*, 65.

<sup>114</sup> *Letter CCIV.7*. See also *Letter CXCI* and especially *Letter CLXIV*.

<sup>115</sup> As Rousseau noted, St Basil was trying to apply “on a world scale the principle of collegiality that had inspired him in his relations with bishops in Cappadocia and Armenia”. See Rousseau, *Basil Caesarea*, 299.

<sup>116</sup> *Letter CCIII.1*.

peaceableness towards all, I can be called a worthy servant of Jesus Christ.”<sup>117</sup> St Basil wants them to recognize that in order to be good ministers of God they are supposed to have the relationship of love with other Christians. He is trying to convince his readers to look at the fact that nothing except “deliberate estrangement” may separate these bishops from him because they have “one Lord, one faith, the same hope.”<sup>118</sup> Even Gentiles, Basil continues his argument, “on account of the uncertainty of the future, make much of alliances with each other, and seek mutual intercourse as being advantageous to them.”<sup>119</sup> All the more, peace and union in the Church is an advantage for Christians in this world where the future events are unknown. According to Basil's thinking, this fellowship is necessary because in the case of a war or persecution the separated community may be easily destroyed. Similar arguments can be found in his letter which was written three years earlier to the bishop Atarbius, where Basil begs him “to peace” with the brothers who are of one mind with him, and zeal and anxiety “for the continued safety of the Churches of the Lord.”<sup>120</sup> Basil is very anxious about the situation in the Church because he feels that someday the disunity may lead to complete destruction. He exhorts this bishop:

Drive out of your mind the idea that you need communion with no one else. To cut one's self off from connexion with the brethren is not the mark of one who is walking by love, nor yet the fulfilling of the commandment of Christ. At the same time I do wish you, with all your good intentions, to take into account that the calamities of the war which are now all round about us may one day be at our own doors, and if we too, like all the rest, have our share of outrage, we shall not find any even to sympathise with us, because in the hour of our prosperity we refused to give our share of sympathy to the wronged.<sup>121</sup>

Although Basil takes as a matter of course that a bishop may have the freedom to rule the community entrusted to him by God using universal principles in the concrete situations he does not agree that the community may maintain a healthy existence if it is

---

<sup>117</sup> *Letter CCIII.1.*

<sup>118</sup> *Letter CCIII.3.*

<sup>119</sup> *Letter CCIII.3.*

<sup>120</sup> *Letter LXV.* For the historical details about the situation with Atarbius see Ayres, *Nicaea and its Legacy*, 224-225.

<sup>121</sup> *Letter LXV.*

separated from the rest of the body of Christ. For him the Church does not consist of independent parts but it lives only as a united organism whose members function in concordance with each other. Basil places strong emphasis on the idea that every bishop needs his brother bishops. Sharing his thoughts and experience with the Senate of Tyana he admits: “I could never take upon myself so much as to think myself able to manage matters without support. I know perfectly well that I stand more in need of the succour of each of the brethren than one hand does of the other. Truly, from our own bodily constitution, the Lord has taught us the necessity of fellowship.”<sup>122</sup> He stresses the idea that God perceives unity between Christians as one of conditions for their access to Him. “Even prayer, Basil continues, when it is not united prayer, loses its natural strength and the Lord has told us that He will be in the midst where two or three call on Him in concord.”<sup>123</sup> In this sense unity between believers is not the option but the only way of life which is provided and accepted by God.

St Basil is concerned with the schisms and fights between the orthodox believers. He admits in his epistle to the Italians and Gauls that the saddest thing about it all is that “the sound part is divided against itself.”<sup>124</sup> He compares the troubles they suffer with those which once happened in Jerusalem when Vespasian was besieging it because the Jews of that time were at once consumed by the internal sedition of their own people. Basil explains with sorrow: “In our case, too, in addition to the open attack of the heretics, the Churches are reduced to utter helplessness by the war raging among those who are supposed to be orthodox.”<sup>125</sup> Basil believes that one of the reasons for all these battles

---

<sup>122</sup> *Letter XCVII.*

<sup>123</sup> *Letter XCVII.* See the same idea in *Hom.29.2*, DelCogliano, 270.

<sup>124</sup> *Letter XCII.3.* See also *Letter CLXIV*: “Our afflictions are heavy, martyrdom is nowhere to be seen, because those who evilly entreat us are called by the same name as ourselves.” See the same idea in *Letter CCXLIII*: “the name of Christians is applied to the persecutors.”

<sup>125</sup> *Letter XCII.3.*

between the orthodox party is “jealousy of authority and the lust of individual mastery” which leads to separation and fights.<sup>126</sup> As he describes:

We attack one another. We are overthrown by one another. If our enemy is not the first to strike us, we are wounded by the comrade at our side. If a foeman is stricken and falls, his fellow soldier tramples him down. There is at least this bond of union between us that we hate our common foes, but no sooner have the enemy gone by than we find enemies in one another.<sup>127</sup>

St Basil is very much concerned about dissensions and disagreements in the Church and he keeps reminding all Christians that these conflicts will not lead them to the Heavenly Kingdom and to communion with the Triune God. On the contrary, he asserts, those who are “divided and at variance with one another deserve to perish.”<sup>128</sup> Therefore, bishops as head leaders of communities should really be aware of the eternal consequences and make every effort in order to bring peace in the Church. Recalling the biblical verse about peacemakers and the reward which is promised to them from God St Basil confirms that with every desire on his own part he “did enroll in the lists of communicants all who accepted that creed [Nicene Creed].”<sup>129</sup> On this ground he communicates with other bishops from different geographical parts of the empire.

Repeatedly calling on the Western bishops St Basil expresses his belief that their letters “contain evidence of sound faith” and proof of their “inviolable agreement and concord, showing thus that the shepherds are following in the footsteps of the Fathers and feeding the people of the Lord with knowledge.”<sup>130</sup> He is excited to know that at least some parts of the Church are in a healthy condition. This gives him “a certain amount of comfort” which creates “something like a smile” in his soul because Basil hopes that the

---

<sup>126</sup> *HS XXX.76.*

<sup>127</sup> *HS XXX.77.* As Ayres very helpfully noted that two constant problems made Basil's attempts at “alliance-building” unsuccessful, “The antipathy of Valens and the imperial government to pro-Nicenes made it difficult to act openly against Homoians, and the constant unpredictability of personal antipathies and personal ambitions made it difficult for Basil to achieve alliances even where doctrinal agreement seemed close.” Ayres, *Nicaea and its Legacy*, 222.

<sup>128</sup> *The Morals LX.1*, Clarke, 117.

<sup>129</sup> *Letter CCIV.6*

<sup>130</sup> *Letter XC.1.* See also *Letter XCII.3* where Basil says that the western bishops preach “the faith of the Fathers without any dissimulation.”



whole Church may recover from the distressing state in which it is now placed.<sup>131</sup> He considers “mutual sympathy and unity” of western bishops as an important blessing to themselves. Basil recognizes that though they are separated by a great extent of country, which parts them from each other, they still belong to “the concord of one body,” because they are “united in the fellowship of the Spirit.”<sup>132</sup> He constantly appeals to them thinking that such a natural obstacle as the long distances cannot really interfere if there is a good will and a desire to help the struggling brethren.

The sound Trinitarian teaching and concord at the West makes St Basil believe that their joint actions may establish the dogmatic union in the eastern part of the Church. He beseeches the bishops using all the arguments:

If then there be any consolation of love, any fellowship of the Spirit, any bowels of mercy, be stirred to help us. Be zealous for true religion, and rescue us from this storm. ...through your prayers and co-operation the Lord may grant to us that same boldness for the truth and glorying in the confession of the divine and saving Trinity which He has given you.<sup>133</sup>

Constantly using the bodily metaphor in his epistles St Basil insists that different parts of the Body are obligated to provide support to each other. For instance, he persuades his “truly God-beloved and very dear” brethren, “fellow ministers of like mind,” the bishops of Gaul and Italy to help eastern Christians because the Lord Jesus Christ has decided “to style” the universal Church of God, His body, in a way that they may live “in intimate association with one another, as befits the agreement of the members.”<sup>134</sup> So in spite of distances, different languages and cultures St Basil expects western bishops to feel the pain of the other part of this Body. “Reckon then, as true disciples of the Lord, Basil appeals to them, that our sufferings are yours.”<sup>135</sup> He also reminds them of a reason why they should sympathize with eastern part of the Church in their troubles:

---

<sup>131</sup> *Letter XC.1.*

<sup>132</sup> *Letter XC.1.*

<sup>133</sup> *Letter XC.1.*

<sup>134</sup> *Letter CCXLIII.1.*

<sup>135</sup> *Letter CCXLIII.4.*

We are not being attacked for the sake of riches, or glory, or any temporal advantages. We stand in the arena to fight for our common heritage, for the treasure of the sound faith, derived from our Fathers. Grieve with us, all ye who love the brethren, at the shutting of the mouths of our men of true religion, and at the opening of the bold and blasphemous lips of all that utter unrighteousness against God.<sup>136</sup>

St Basil does not have any doubts that this “common heritage” which is the faith in the Trinity should be kept at any expense and without a helping hand from the western part the churches in the East will “suffer complete shipwreck of the faith.”<sup>137</sup> His belief that the Church is one in spite of geographical, cultural and political obstacles makes him appeal to all its members who hold on to the proper doctrine. He shares his thoughts in one of the epistles to the Italians and Gauls, and expresses the idea of ecclesial synod which should be held in order to restore peace and unity in the eastern part of the Church.<sup>138</sup> St Basil perceives such assemblies of bishops as a means by which the Christians may discern the truth and collectively decide what direction to follow. However, he regards any assemblies as authoritative only if they bear witness to the sound faith in the Trinity.<sup>139</sup> In this sense in many of his works he refers to the creed and canons which were issued at the council of Nicaea as the valid authority.

St Basil strongly believes that only collective efforts may bring reconciliation and keep the orthodox faith in all parts of the Church. Therefore, he promotes the idea of an ecumenical council where different communities may send their representatives. Using

---

<sup>136</sup> *Letter CCXLIII.4.*

<sup>137</sup> *Letter CCXLIII.4.*

<sup>138</sup> *Letter XCII.3.* This epistle is signed by 32 bishops. Therefore, Basil already united some Eastern bishops against heretics and he wants the Western part of the Church to take part in the process of healing and restoration.

<sup>139</sup> Basil admits that nobody makes him to keep communion with the person if he “does not agree with the sound doctrine of the faith.” See *Letter CCXIV* about Antiochian schism. For historical and theological background see chapter 9 in Ayres, *Nicaea and its Legacy*, 222-229. In his correspondence Basil also mentions episcopal meetings (*συντυχία*) where many problems were discussed which could not be solved by means of letters and personal visits. In addition to that there were held episcopal conferences at Caesarea on the occasions of festivity of the local martyrs. See *Letter C*. Many episcopal synods were held to secure advice “on the matters in hand” and to discuss current issues of the local communities. *Letter CCI*, *Letter XCVIII*. See this idea in Fedwick, *The Church*, 123-124. The purpose of such local synods or “festal assemblies” is stated in his *Homily on Not Three Gods*. See *Hom. 29.2*, DelCogliano, 270-271. “The present spectacle is but a remnant of the ancient love of the fathers. For its sake they inaugurated the practice of holding these festal assemblies, so that the estrangement that develops over time could be dissipated through personal interaction at set intervals, and those who live far away, by gathering in this one place, could use the event to initiate relationships of friendship and love. This is a spiritual assembly that renews old relationships and provides a starting point for those to come.”

very humble language he writes to western brethren: "...hasten to us, hasten to us now, true brothers, we implore you; on our knees we implore you, hold out a helping hand... do not let the light of the faith be put out in the place where it shone first."<sup>140</sup> Although St Basil confirms in this epistle that western bishops do not have any need to learn from him how to act and that the Holy Spirit Himself will direct them he still shares some ideas about the future synod. He makes it clear that "considerable number of brethren" are expected from the West in order that the leaders who confess the orthodox faith outnumber those who do not. The presence of a majority of bishops who support the Nicene Creed is essential because they must "have weight in effecting a reform, not merely from the dignity of those whose emissaries they are, but also from their own number."<sup>141</sup> St Basil is trying to secure the number of orthodox bishops which may take part in the future synod because the decisions become authoritative if they are approved by the majority of leaders present there. Then St Basil formulates the goal of this synod according to his vision: through the collegial decision "they will restore the creed drawn up by our fathers at Nicaea, proscribe the heresy, and, by bringing into agreement all who are of one mind, speak peace to the Churches."<sup>142</sup> In Basil's thinking, all believers must follow the decisions made by the bishops present at the synod as legitimate delegates. He clearly explains what kind of results he expects from the council in his epistle to the western brethren: "For the future all who confess the apostolic faith may put an end to the schisms which they have unhappily devised, and be reduced for the future to the authority of the Church; that so, once more, the body of Christ may be complete, restored to integrity with all its members."<sup>143</sup>

St Basil perceives such ecumenical councils as the highest human authority which is competent to solve the problems and to maintain ecclesiastical unity. They are important

---

<sup>140</sup> *Letter XCII.3*. St Basil constantly writes letters to the western brethren asking for help. For example, *Letter XX*, *Letter XCII*, *Letter CCXLIII*, *Letter CCLXIII*. In the years 371, 372, 376, 377 accordingly. See chronology in Fedwick, *The Church*, 133-153.

<sup>141</sup> *Letter XCII.3*.

<sup>142</sup> *Letter XCII.3*.

<sup>143</sup> *Letter XCII.3*.

steps in the life of the Church that help to keep peace and the right balance between diversity and unity within the Church through affirmation of the proper doctrines and beliefs. These councils ensure that what the local communities receive from their bishops is faithful to the teaching of the past which goes back to the Gospel of Jesus Christ. Therefore, convocation of the council and consequent submission to all decisions serves as the collective affirmation of God's will which is revealed to all the participants and through them to all the members of the Church.

## **Conclusion to chapter 6**

In Basil's understanding all local congregations and all Christians separated by long distances still constitute One universal Church of God, body of Christ, which is united by His Spirit. Consequently, all the schisms and battles in the Church are perceived by him as disobedience to God Himself and as a sinful behaviour. St Basil strongly believes that in order to fulfil God's plan for them the believers have to communicate in love and concord. At the same time the Trinitarian confession as the "saving confession" should become a foundation for their unity.

Although St Basil is completely convinced that Triune God is the real Creator and the Head of the Church who also maintains its existence he pays a lot of attention to the role of bishops and clergy in the local communities. They are the ones who are given the authority from God in order to bring peace and unity among believers. St Basil emphasizes the importance of personal example of each leader in the Church. Serving God as the faithful stewards they are supposed to take care of all the believers entrusted to them teaching the proper doctrine of God the Trinity and helping their people to grow toward Christlikeness.

In Basil's opinion, love and mutual communications among these leaders should be the essential part of the life in the Church. This may create the desirable union and bring reconciliation between the divided groups. Writing to the western and eastern brethren St

Basil expresses his belief that the ecumenical councils should help to achieve agreement about common beliefs and to sustain the communication between all communities worldwide. In this sense such conciliar gatherings become the means of restoration and maintenance of fellowship of love among the believers.

## Chapter 7

### TRINITARIAN PHILANTHROPY AS A BASIS FOR MINISTRY OF THE CHURCH

Building on material of previous chapters this chapter links St Basil's understanding of God with the practical actions of believers in the Church and in the world around them. We have learned from the second chapter that St Basil perceives God as Triune Creator, the Father, Son and Holy Spirit, Who created humanity and leads it to salvation, to eschatological union with Himself. In chapter three we came to a conclusion that in Basil's thought philanthropy of all Trinitarian Persons forms a foundation for the relationships in the Church. St Basil's battle for the proper Trinitarian confession and its use in the liturgical life of the Church from chapters five and six informs our understanding that every time he uses the word God he implies Trinitarian *koinonia* and conjoined actions of all Persons of God. This chapter will develop these ideas further and help us to understand how St Basil's perception of the Triune God and His vision of the created world shapes Basil's attitude toward people both in the Church and in the world and his ideas of the Church's ministry.

In St Basil's thought, the ministry of mercy originates from the fulfilment of the commandment of God to love one's neighbour and it is based on the imitation of His *φιλανθρωπία* or the love of the Father, and of the Saviour, and of the Spirit toward all humanity. In this sense, Basil's perception of compassion is rooted in his theological presuppositions concerning the relationship of Triune Creator to human beings. Hence, his ministry to the poor and the needy is the application of this teaching in his life and the life of the Church. Many theological principles can be seen behind his actions and practical achievements done by the Church but four major interrelated ideas can be formulated as:

a) respect for human life and recognition of the worth of all human persons in the eyes of the Triune God; b) the role of human beings as stewards of God in a world created by

Him; c) evaluation of all human actions in the light of eschatological consequences and the life in the heavenly *Ekklesia* in the presence of all Persons of the Trinity; d) a theocentric philanthropy as a basis for ministry of every member of the Church. In this chapter we will discuss these directions of St Basil's thought which serve as a foundation for his actions and which reveal to us his understanding of ministry of the Christian community.

### **Humans, great and small, in the eyes of Triune Creator**

One of the great theological presuppositions which forms the foundation for Basil's social activity and the works of mercy performed by the Church is his belief that all people deserve compassion and they are equal in the presence of their Triune Creator.<sup>1</sup> In his treatise *On the Holy Spirit* St Basil asserts that "even though one man be called master and another servant, nevertheless, both in view of our mutual equality of rank and as chattels of our Creator, we are all fellow slaves."<sup>2</sup> The same idea he shares in his conversation with prefect Modestus. St Basil reminds him that so he is a prefect and an illustrious one but he still is the creature of God as any other of Basil's subjects.<sup>3</sup>

In Basil's theology, what constitutes human value and dignity is God's love toward all His children. Every person is precious because God created all humans, Christ died for them, and the Holy Spirit works with all believers until their death. For each person God the Trinity has a plan on how to deliver him or her from death and to bring each to the heavenly dimension of the Church. God uses various approaches in the lives of different people but through the presence of the Holy Spirit He guides all of them, whether rich or poor, to the same destination where they will become equal indeed.

---

<sup>1</sup> See *Homily delivered in Lakizois: Hom. 26.2*, DelCogliano, 197-198. "These differences that exist among the brothers are obvious to you: one is poor, another rich, one is a stranger, another a family member. ... They have one and the same nature: they both – this one and that one – are human beings. ...He [God] wants you to be the comforter of those in need..."

<sup>2</sup> See *HS XX.51*.

<sup>3</sup> See *Oration XLIII.63*.

The perspective from which St Basil looks at people's social position, status in society and origin is built on the recognition that all humans have a common nature and everything on the earth is provided by their Creator for their common possession.<sup>4</sup> Throughout his homilies on social issues he constantly emphasizes that nobody really owns anything in this world. He is convinced that people cannot claim something as their own “by right of preemption”<sup>5</sup> and seize common goods before others have the opportunity. Defending his point of view St Basil asks his listeners: “Tell me, what is your own? What did you bring into this life? From what did you receive it?”<sup>6</sup> He preaches and tries to make his audience realize that the world is created by the Triune God in order to be shared: “For if we all took only what was necessary to satisfy our own needs, giving the rest to those who lack, no one would be rich, no one would be poor, and no one would be in need.”<sup>7</sup> In this sense the wealth does not belong to anyone in the world and “one person alone cannot enjoy what is offered for the benefit of all in common.”<sup>8</sup> Using his rhetorical skills St Basil persuades his listeners:

O mortal, recognize your Benefactor! Consider yourself, who you are, what resources have been entrusted to you, from whom you received them, and why you received more than others. You have been made a minister of God's goodness, a steward of your fellow servants. Do not suppose that all this was furnished for your own gullet! Resolve to treat the things in your possessions as belonging to others.<sup>9</sup>

According to Basil's understanding, God distributes things that are necessary for life unequally among people but there is a purpose in it. They have to recognize their Triune Creator and acknowledge that all their possessions were given to them by Him. Therefore, those who are wealthy may become the good and wise stewards of what they received and share their possessions with those who are in need. Then at the end the rich “might receive the reward of benevolence and good stewardship, while the poor are honoured for patient

---

<sup>4</sup> *Hom. 6.1*, Schroeder, 60. See *Hom. 26.2*, DelCogliano, 197-198.

<sup>5</sup> *Hom. 6.7*, Schroeder, 69.

<sup>6</sup> *Hom. 6.7*, Schroeder, 69.

<sup>7</sup> *Hom. 6.7*, Schroeder, 69.

<sup>8</sup> *Hom. 6.7*, Schroeder, 69. See the same idea in *Hom. 7.3*, Schroeder, 46f.

<sup>9</sup> *Hom. 6.2*, Schroeder, 61.



endurance in their struggles."<sup>10</sup> In this sense, the lack of wealth is beneficial to the poor because they have the better opportunity to conform to the requirements and commandments of the Lord through obedience and patience in the time of troubles. At same time the rich have a chance to demonstrate their ability to manage their possessions well in order to relieve the sufferings of those who are tormented by hunger. In this way they may be healed from their selfishness through the expression of love to the needy and through manifestation of the compassion of Christ. As a result both groups of people will benefit from the acts of compassion and will learn how not to be attached to the earthly treasures.

In his homilies on the words "Give heed to thyself"<sup>11</sup> St Basil reminds his listeners that all people look equal after death: "Look down into their graves and see if you are able to discern which is the slave and which the master; which the pauper, which the rich man. Distinguish, if you can, the captive from the king, the strong man from the weak, the comely from ill-favored."<sup>12</sup> Both the rich and the poor have to remember their nature that they are mortal and "be mindful of themselves." If the wealthy "give heed to themselves" then they will not "yield to vanity" because their earthly glory or status will not be taken into account in the heavenly *Ekklesia* in the presence of the Trinity. St Basil believes that the wealth or the grandeur are only "instruments for practicing virtue to those who use them well."<sup>13</sup> In the case of the poor there is always a "good hope" because the present state is not the end. For the faithful there are always the blessings granted by Creator and for those people they are "reserved by promise for the future."<sup>14</sup> Therefore, the rich should not boast of their wealth, or be proud of their lineage and the poor should not despair because of their pitiful conditions. All of them have to think about their future life after death where God the Trinity chooses different criteria for their evaluation. Finishing his

---

<sup>10</sup> *Hom. 6.7*, Schroeder, 69.

<sup>11</sup> *Hom. 3*. The words are from Deut 15:9.

<sup>12</sup> *Hom. 3*, Wagner, 441.

<sup>13</sup> *Hom. 11*, Wagner, 471.

<sup>14</sup> *Hom. 3*, Wagner, 441.

discourse St Basil provides at least two answers about what constitutes human value and why God participates in the lives of everyone both the wealthy and the poor.

First of all, you are a man, the only one of all living beings to have been formed by God. Is not this enough to call forth the most ecstatic joy in a man who reasons intelligently – that you have been formed by the very Hands of God who created all things? Secondly, having been made according to the image of the Creator, you are able to arrive at a dignity equal to that of the angels by leading a good life.<sup>15</sup>

Describing the dignity of an individual person St Basil also says that in every one of us as in “a miniature replica of cosmic order” it is possible to “contemplate the great wisdom of the Creator.”<sup>16</sup> In this sense, every human being contains in himself or herself a great value compatible with the information about the universe. St Basil is convinced that every person has the opportunity to reach this dignity which the Triune God originally expected from humans but the condition now is “a good life” here on earth, which implies the fulfilment of some responsibilities in this world. Although St Basil constantly repeats the idea that human life on the earth is temporary and it is only a time of preparation for the life to come, he wants his listeners to be actively involved in this life and to do what their Creator prepared for them as a part of their earthly assignment. In some sense, Christians in the Church are supposed to become God's co-workers in this world where they have to live until the last day which is appointed for them by the Lord. “Leading a good life” in Basil's thinking implies obedience to God's commandments and fulfilment of His plans for humanity. In order to accomplish everything that God prepared for them, Christians have Christ as their example, the Holy Spirit as their guide who illuminates them and leads them in their work, and the Father who is the source of everything including life and love. According to St Basil, the grace is granted to the believers by the Holy Spirit during their baptism that “we may fulfill our duties by faith through charity, and, thus, the satisfaction of the divine love in Christ may be perfectly accomplished in us.”<sup>17</sup>

---

<sup>15</sup> *Hom. 3*, Wagner, 441.

<sup>16</sup> *Hom. 3*, Wagner, 444. The Greek: *μικρῷ τινι διακόσμῳ*, PG 31:216A.

<sup>17</sup> *CBap 1*, Wagner, 360.

One of the most important commandments of God which Basil describes as “the mother of the commandments”<sup>18</sup> is the requirement to love and care of “your neighbour” as yourself. Therefore, if the Christians call the Lord their teacher they have to “carry out the duties of the disciples”<sup>19</sup> which implies the simplification of their own needs for the satisfaction of the needs of others. St Basil explains this principle of applied love with following words:

Care for the needy requires the expenditure of wealth: when all share alike, distributing their possessions among themselves, they each receive a small portion for their individual needs. Thus, those who love their neighbour as themselves possess nothing more than their neighbour.<sup>20</sup>

This idea of equality among Christians is clearly reflected in Basil's ideal vision of the Church. He promotes the relationships which existed in the community of the first Christians as the best example that the believers have to follow. St Basil persuades his listeners: “Let us zealously imitate the early Christian community, where everything was held in common – life, soul, concord, a common table, indivisible kinship – while unfeigned love constituted many bodies as one and joined many souls into a single harmonious whole.”<sup>21</sup> He introduces them to the Church which is able to fulfil its purpose intended by God. This gathering of believers based on love presents a new social reality where the needs of people are met and God the Trinity is worshiped and glorified. Christians enjoyed equal rights in this community in order to serve the hungry, the thirsty, the unclothed, or the imprisoned.

St Basil reminds his audience that God Himself was “filled with sympathy and compassion for the hungry.”<sup>22</sup> Therefore, as faithful followers of Christ believers are expected to live according to the model which He provided for them while teaching here on earth. For this reason some of them “have received wealth as a stewardship, and not for

---

<sup>18</sup> *Hom.* 8.7, Schroeder, 85.

<sup>19</sup> *Hom.* 7.1, Schroeder, 42.

<sup>20</sup> *Hom.* 7.1, Schroeder, 43. See this idea also in *The Morals XLVIII*, Clarke, 113-114.

<sup>21</sup> *Hom.* 8.8, Schroeder, 87. St Basil implies the words from Acts 2:41-46; 4:32. He also uses the same idea that believers had “all things common” in *LR*, Clarke, 166.

<sup>22</sup> *Hom.* 8.7, Schroeder, 85.

their own enjoyment.”<sup>23</sup> So, through showing mercy, giving and sharing they may imitate the loving attitude of Triune God from whom “comes everything beneficial.”<sup>24</sup> By such acts believers become His true stewards in this world and fulfil the obligations imposed on them by their Creator. If they manage common resources properly then everybody may benefit in this world.<sup>25</sup>

Another reason why every person deserves respect and an attitude of compassion is because “those who believe” have the potential to be “made sons of God through faith” and “are worthy of being called gods themselves.”<sup>26</sup> Therefore, to turn back on your fellow believer is to dishonour Creator and His loving plans toward humanity. This leads us to an idea that although the rich and the poor have different starting points they should strive to reach the same goal – godliness, and use the opportunities which are provided in their lives by the Triune God from the beginning. From some of them it is expected they become faithful servants or stewards and the others have to go through hardships of life with patience hoping that they will receive from the abundant wealth of those who were entrusted by Creator with His resources.

As far as the common property and resources are concerned, St Basil believes that everything that is created by the Triune God is interconnected and constitutes a single and whole entity including people. In connection with this, he expresses the conviction that the actions of people toward each other may influence the created order both in a positive and in a negative way. This view is employed by St Basil in one of his homilies which was preached in the time of drought and famine.<sup>27</sup> In this sermon he points out that even the fields and nature suffer because of human unwillingness to share with others what they received from God. In his opinion, the greediness and the lack of love toward the

---

<sup>23</sup> *Hom. 7.3*, Schroeder, 46. See the same idea in *Hom. 11*, Wagner, 472.

<sup>24</sup> *Hom. 6.1*, Schroeder, 60. See also *Hom. 7.8*, Schroeder, 57f-58. Basil believes that the instances of God’s providence is the evidence of His “fatherly care which he often demonstrates towards humanity.” See *Hom. 8.6*, Schroeder, 83.

<sup>25</sup> See this idea in *Hom. 11*, Wagner, 473.

<sup>26</sup> *Ps. VII*, Way, 171. PG29:238B, believers will be called gods – *Θεοὶ*.

<sup>27</sup> *Hom. 8*, Schroeder, 73-88.

neighbour became a cause of the disorder. St Basil is convinced, that when in society people neglect the needy and become “grudging and unsociable toward the poor” then the Lord threatens them with righteous judgment and uses for this natural forces.<sup>28</sup> Therefore, unsocial behaviour of those who have enough food for everyone leads to “the multitude of sins” which causes changes in the character of the seasons, the alternation of natural order and fruitlessness of the earth.<sup>29</sup> St Basil blames such selfish people openly:

It is on your account that this catastrophe was decreed, because you have but do not give, because you neglect the hungry, because you pay no heed to the plight of the miserable, because you show no mercy to those who prostrate themselves before you. Evil things come upon the people for the sake of a few; for one person’s depravity the people are punished.<sup>30</sup>

Using the example of Nineveh St Basil shows “the appropriate mindset for wise servants” which implies the repentance of those people “who are entangled in sins.”<sup>31</sup> In order to restore balance in nature and bring an end to the drought, human beings have to reverse their activity and to recompense their evil deeds with the good ones. Basil’s appeal is: “Tear up the unjust contract, so that sin might also be loosed. Wipe away the debt that bears high rates of interest, so that the earth may bear its usual fruits.”<sup>32</sup> He suggests that the provisions which everybody needs in the country “might now be measured back” by Triune Creator if they start to care for the strangers, to support the orphans and to minister to the widows.

Stressing the idea that gracious acts of mercy toward the hungry may change the existing circumstances St Basil comes to an interesting theological insight in this homily about “the primal sin.”<sup>33</sup> Once again St Basil returns to the story of creation and to the moment in the history of humanity when the relationships with their Triune Created were

---

<sup>28</sup> *Hom. 8.2, Schroeder, 76.* See similar idea that “disorder of cities and nations, drought in the air and barrenness of the earth, the harsh calamities in the life of each, cut short the growth of evil” in his *Homily 9*. St Basil is convinced that this kind of evils come into being to stop true evils which implies injustice in society. Harrison, *On the Human Condition*, 70-71.

<sup>29</sup> *Hom. 8.2, Schroeder, 75.* St Basil repeats this idea one more time in this homily: “Let us truly account this catastrophe as having occurred primarily because of our own sins.” *Hom. 8.5, Schroeder, 80.*

<sup>30</sup> *Hom. 8.4, Schroeder, 79.*

<sup>31</sup> *Hom. 8.4, Schroeder, 78.*

<sup>32</sup> *Hom. 8.4, Schroeder, 78.*

<sup>33</sup> *Hom. 8.7, Schroeder, 86.*

broken. He suggests that with sharing the food people may “undo,” in some sense, the original sin of first humans. As Basil explains it, “Just as Adam transmitted sin by eating wrongly, so we wipe away the treacherous food when we remedy the need and hunger of our brothers and sisters.”<sup>34</sup> Therefore, acts of mercy help to improve not only material condition of the existing world but the spiritual as well. St Basil tries to convey the idea that fulfilment of God’s commandments, which includes compassion toward the neighbour, makes people more sociable and better humans. On the contrary, greedy people show themselves “to be more savage than the unreasoning animals” that are able to use in common the plants which grow from the earth.<sup>35</sup> Through images of nature he illustrates his point that selfishness is not a normal condition of the creation. Therefore, when people keep to themselves what belongs to many others they indicate that they have lost their original humanness and that their nature was corrupted. In Basil’s opinion, the only reason why their Triune Creator continues to provide the rich people with recourses is His patience and His hope to convert them and to change their attitude. As “the lover of humankind,”<sup>36</sup> God did not immediately judge them. St Basil believes that the divine goal is to help them understand the purpose of their existence, to lead them out of misanthropy to philanthropy and to make them share with His other children and relieve their sufferings. Through these actions both the rich and the poor will be able to reach the perfection in their lives. In connection to this, St Basil addresses the believers in the Church with the following words: “Let us now examine our lives, both individually and corporately.”<sup>37</sup> This implies that after examining their conditions people may realize that they need less material things for their earthly life but they need more spiritual ones which are necessary for the life eternal. At the same time this corporate examination may reveal the hardships in the lives of others due to the lack of food and clothes. Therefore, the

---

<sup>34</sup> *Hom.* 8.7, Schroeder, 86.

<sup>35</sup> *Hom.* 8.8, Schroeder, 86. In *Hom.* 7.3 St Basil calls such behaviour “inhuman.” Schroeder, 45.

<sup>36</sup> *Hom.* 6.1, Schroeder, 60.

<sup>37</sup> *Hom.* 8.5, Schroeder, 80.

Church may become the place where people are able to compensate the needs of each other. Those who experience a spiritual destitution may enrich themselves through giving to others who lack the material goods for physical survival. The poor and the needy can share with the rich what they learned from their circumstances about God's mercy and faithfulness. As a result all of them will be able to improve their human dignity, to move forward to Christlikeness and to enter together the Heavenly *Ekklesia* praising God the Trinity for His mercy and wisdom.

### **Union with God the Trinity as the ultimate goal of Christians and a ministry of compassion**

As we have seen earlier, St Basil perceives the Church as a social event which all believers begin to experience here on earth and which continues in the heavenly realities.<sup>38</sup> Life in a Christian community leads the people to union with the Father, Son and Holy Spirit into the age to come when all their relations will be maintained according to God's law of love. In this sense, the Church is the sphere where believers should be united to their Triune Creator and to each other by the same law in this present life. In Basil's opinion this should be demonstrated as "faith working through love"<sup>39</sup> that includes feeding the hungry, offering hospitality to the stranger, helping the sick and the needy. Describing dangerous and destructive consequences of sin for the community in his prologue to ascetic rules *De iudicio Dei* St Basil ends his discourse with an interesting conclusion concerning compassion and acts of mercy in the Church:

For it is written: "The Lord is faithful in all his words" – whether forbidding anything, or commanding, or promising, or threatening, whether He refers to the doing of what is forbidden, or to the leaving undone what is commanded. For that leaving of good works undone is punished equally with perpetrating evil works.<sup>40</sup>

---

<sup>38</sup> See, for example, the discussion of the idea of the Church as a new social reality in chapter 4 of this thesis.

<sup>39</sup> *The Morals* LXXX.22. See also *De Jud.*, Clarke, 89.

<sup>40</sup> *De Jud.*, Clarke, 87-88. See the same idea of punishment for "the lack of good works" in *The Longer Rules*, Clarke, 146.

He develops this idea further and explains in more detail the relation of eternal punishment to the undone actions of mercy. St Basil believes that at the day of last judgment God will say to some people “Depart from me, you cursed, into everlasting fire...” not because they committed murder or fornication but because they “neglected good works.”<sup>41</sup> In Basil’s thinking, omitting acts that are commanded is disobedience to God and, therefore, it deserves an equal punishment as any other form of disobedience. The only way to “escape the wrath that comes upon the sons of disobedience” and be able to participate in “the future age of immortality“ is to live the life pleasing to their Triune Creator through not only avoiding what is forbidden but earnestly observing “what is approved.”<sup>42</sup> St Basil is convinced that a person can be found worthy of obtaining eternal life in the heavenly kingdom only if he/she keeps God’s covenant and is “mindful of his commandments to do them.”<sup>43</sup>

A similar idea about the eternal punishment for neglecting good works here on earth is repeated one more time in *The Morals* when he recalls the words from Matt 3:10 that “every tree which does not bear good fruit is cut down and thrown into the fire.” Therefore, Basil affirms, “after departure from this life there is no opportunity for good deeds, since God in his forbearance has provided the present life for doing those things that please Him.”<sup>44</sup> Our present life on earth is temporary and in order to gain the life eternal people have to follow the commandments given in the Gospel not only by words but by deeds. It is expected of every true believer to live her/his life in balance thinking not only of their own needs but the needs of others and producing works of mercy.

St Basil keeps reminding his listeners and readers in his homilies that their lives in this world stretch before them like a long road and the periods of life look as stages in a

---

<sup>41</sup> *De Jud.*, Clarke, 88. See the same idea in *Homily 6*. St Basil repeats the word from Matt 25:41-43 and adds: “Moreover, those who under accusation in this passage are not those who have stolen anything; these are rather leveled against those who have not shared with others.” Translation is from C. Paul Schroeder, *On Social Justice: St Basil the Great* (Crestwood: St Vladimir’s Seminary Press, 2009), 70.

<sup>42</sup> *De Jud.*, Clarke, 89.

<sup>43</sup> *De Jud.*, Wagner, 54. See this idea also in *LR III* (R.2), Clarke, 157f.

<sup>44</sup> *The Morals*, Wagner, 73.



journey. “This road”, Basil goes on, “however, draws those who travel it by main force toward the end which has been appointed by the Lord” and at this end everybody has to arrive.<sup>45</sup> He wants the believers to remember that they must prepare themselves daily for departure from this world and keep their eyes fixed upon Christ. They have to understand that “none of the pleasures of this life” can be truly possessed by them.<sup>46</sup> Even if they keep them while they are alive and these material things do not pass into the hands of others, they will be lost to these people at their death because the nature of things is not such that they could accompany them at their departure.<sup>47</sup> In this sense nothing from the material world can belong to humans forever. Gold or acres of land, horses or herds of animals may be enjoyed in this life only briefly.

What really belongs to us as people, in Basil’s opinion, is only “a soul, a light and spiritual being,” and “a body, which was provided for the soul by the Creator as a vehicle for carrying on life.”<sup>48</sup> He believes that every human being as “a mind united with a fitting and serviceable body” at the end “will receive the recompense for the deeds performed during this life.”<sup>49</sup> The only things that do not abandon us on our way toward the next world are our virtues if they become our possessions through practice while we labour on earth. St Basil is convinced that only this kind of possessors will be placed “in the ranks of angels and will shine for all eternity”<sup>50</sup> in the presence of their Triune Creator.

Answering the question about the way of life that can help gain such virtues St Basil uses a metaphor of a storm on the sea. He leads his listeners to the conclusion that as sailors reduce the load of their cargo in order to save their lives so believers have to place their “burden” and riches in “safer ships.”<sup>51</sup> He assures them that if they use “the stomachs

---

<sup>45</sup> *Hom. 21*, Wagner, 490.

<sup>46</sup> *Hom. 21*, Wagner, 491. See also *Hom. 26.5*, DelCogliano, 201.

<sup>47</sup> *Hom. 21*, Wagner, 491. See similar idea in *Homily 7* when St Basil affirms that “even if your belongings could follow you to the future life, they would not be particularly desirable there, since they would be overshadowed by truly precious things.” Schroeder, *On Social Justice*, 47.

<sup>48</sup> *Hom. 21*, Wagner, 494.

<sup>49</sup> *Hom. 21*, Wagner, 494.

<sup>50</sup> *Hom. 21*, Wagner, 494.

<sup>51</sup> *Hom. 21*, Wagner, 496-497.

of the poor” as such ships then their money is not lost. On the contrary, all the riches invested in the lives of the needy are preserved and help them to reach “the harbour in advance” and enter into glory.<sup>52</sup> In Basil’s view, distribution of possessions among poor leads to salvation and helps to escape “the fire of hell” to those who are the owners.<sup>53</sup> He himself calls it “a paradox” but at the same time he is convinced that it is entirely true:

When wealth is scattered in the manner which our Lord directed, it naturally returns, but when it is gathered, it naturally disperses. If you try to keep it, you will not have it; if you scatter it, you will not lose it. “They have distributed freely, they have given to the poor; their righteousness endures forever.”<sup>54</sup>

St Basil believes that heavenly *Ekklesia* or “the Kingdom of Heaven does not receive such people” who resist laying aside their property but who “gladly undertake other tasks” in order to enter it. As he affirms: “I know many who fast, pray, sigh, and demonstrate every manner of piety, so long as it cost them nothing, yet would not part with a penny to help those in distress.”<sup>55</sup> Therefore, he implies that salvation depends not only on spiritual exercises or mystical experiences and contemplation but on people’s willingness to serve God and the neighbours with all their strength and private possessions. In this sense, the acts of compassion are the condition for entering the heavenly dimension of the Church and have union with the Triune God. St Basil's harsh words sound as a serious warning: “You showed no mercy; it will not be shown to you. You opened not your house; you will be expelled from the Kingdom. You gave not your bread; you will not receive eternal life.”<sup>56</sup>

The logic and method of persuasion behind Basil's words are simple. He shows the attractiveness of life eternal in the presence of their loving Triune Creator and then reminds his audience of the negative consequences in a case of disobedience to God's

---

<sup>52</sup> *Hom. 21*, Wagner, 497. St Basil repeats exactly the same idea in another homily: “If you want storehouses, you have them in the stomachs of the poor. Lay up for yourself treasure in heaven.” *Hom. 6*, Schroeder, 68.

<sup>53</sup> *Hom. 21*, Wagner, 497.

<sup>54</sup> *Hom. 7*, Schroeder, 44. Basil uses the same verse from Ps 112:9 in *Hom. 6*, Schroeder, 63.

<sup>55</sup> *Hom. 7*, Schroeder, 46.

<sup>56</sup> *Hom. 7*, Schroeder, 49. See also *Hom. 6*, Schroeder, 61. St Basil keeps reminding that “a strict accounting” will be demanded from the rich people who did not share the possessions with the needy. .

commandments.<sup>57</sup> In order to convince them, St Basil tells about “fearful things” that await them when “the wrath of God” will be revealed from heaven, about “the resurrection of condemnation” for those who have done evil, about “the everlasting shame” which will be a portion of sinners, and about “a fury of fire that will consume the adversaries.”<sup>58</sup> He admits that he uses all these things and examples to make them sad, to move them, to make them desire the Kingdom, and fear hell. He appeals both to their conscience and to their awareness of eternal punishment.<sup>59</sup> Basil wants the rich people to realize that in the eyes of God the Trinity a person who has not shared with others is guilty as much as a robber and a thief.

The bread you are holding back is for the hungry, the clothes you keep put away are for the naked, the shoes that are rotting away with disuse are for those who have none, the silver you keep buried in the earth is for needy. You are thus guilty of injustice toward as many as you might have aided, and did not.<sup>60</sup>

Talking of salvation St Basil uses an interesting language. Although he strongly believes that all humans are called by the Triune God into His Kingdom and they can get there only by His grace, he still says that somebody's “riches may become a ransom” for him.<sup>61</sup> In the other sermon he explains that people have “the opportunity to exchange corruptible things for the Kingdom of Heaven.”<sup>62</sup> He believes that people's labour here on earth is “their provision for the future life” and their “good works will treasure up for *them* glory and honour according to the just requital of the Judge.”<sup>63</sup>

---

<sup>57</sup> *Hom. 6, Schroeder, 70.*

<sup>58</sup> *Hom. 7, Schroeder, 52.* See also *Hom. 8.7, Schroeder, 85.* Basil affirms that “the person who is good and gives generously will enter into eternal life before the rest. But the unsociable and stingy will be the first to be given over to the eternal fire.”

<sup>59</sup> St Basil appeals with eagerness to rich and greedy people: “Will you never regain consciousness? ... Will you not bring before your eyes the Judgment Seat of Christ?” *Hom. 7, Schroeder, 51-52.*

<sup>60</sup> *Hom. 6, Schroeder, 70.* In some cases when people were really starving to death St Basil accused the rich to be the murderers. In his homily “*In Time of Famine and Drought*” he says: “For whoever has the ability to remedy the sufferings of others, but chooses rather to withhold aid out of selfish motives, may properly be judged the equivalent of a murderer.” *Hom. 8, Schroeder, 85.*

<sup>61</sup> *Hom. 6, Schroeder, 71.* St Basil is using masculine language. Therefore, it is used in this example.

<sup>62</sup> *Hom. 7.3, Schroeder, 47.* Similar thinking can be found in *The Longer Rules* where St Basil affirms that the heavenly Kingdom can be attained only if people sacrifice all their possessions and whatever is commonly cherished. See Clarke, 168.

<sup>63</sup> *Hom. 13, Way 194.*

In Basil's thought, the wish to obtain salvation *per se* and the unseen rewards of God's Kingdom should determine believer's behaviour. So he persuades the listeners of his sermons to achieve such rewards through donations and help to starving and dying people.<sup>64</sup> If we look closely at Basil's arguments we notice that his purpose is not only to help those who suffer, to make the rich share their wealth and to bring peace to his community. One of the main goals of his discourses is to save the souls of everyone who is under his spiritual guidance: both the poor and the rich. He wants all of them to enter the heavenly *Ekklesia* and enjoy fellowship with the Triune God as His children whom He loves. Obviously, he believes that the rich people deserve salvation as much as the poor ones but it requires them to make an extra effort in order to follow God's commandments. In Basil's opinion, the more people are attached to their possessions the more they "lack in love."<sup>65</sup>

According to Basil's thinking, the Triune God as "the Great Physician of souls and bodies," seeing their deficiency in this vital area wishes to make them whole.<sup>66</sup> Both the rich and the poor are led by the "loving Spirit" (*φιλανθρώπου Πνεύματος*)<sup>67</sup> through hardships and difficult situations in order that their hearts might be changed and healed from selfishness and greed. St Basil believes that Christ as the Good Counsellor shows the best example: He "became poor for us so that He might make us rich through His poverty, and 'gave Himself a ransom for all.'"<sup>68</sup> Therefore, Christians have to follow what they have been commanded in order "to become heirs of eternal life in Christ Himself."<sup>69</sup> In this sense, the willingness of believers to share their possessions, to take part in lives of other people, and to care for their needs helps them to obtain the Christlikeness and

---

<sup>64</sup> See, for example, *Hom. 11, Concerning Envy*, Wagner, 473f. St Basil affirms: "In this way, you will win salvation for yourself and, the greater your good deeds, the greater will be the glory manifested in you."

<sup>65</sup> *Hom. 7*, Schroeder, 43.

<sup>66</sup> *Hom. 7*, Schroeder, 43.

<sup>67</sup> *Ps. XXXIII.5*, PG 29:361D.

<sup>68</sup> *Hom. 7*, Schroeder, 57.

<sup>69</sup> *Hom. 7*, Schroeder, 58. In *The Morals* St Basil also reminds to believers that the goal of every Christian is to be conformed to the pattern which they behold in Christ. See *The Morals*, Wagner 196.

salvation which implies life in the heavenly dimension of the Church with all the Persons of the Trinity.

### **Faith into action: transformation of lives through a theocentric philanthropy**

Throughout his life St Basil not only preached in the Church about the pressing needs of his time, sharing his theological ideas and concerns with others, but he actively applied his teaching in the lives of people around him. He believed in education through liturgical practice, he promoted the idea that Christians have to gain “the knowledge of God,” he fought for the correct theological terms and formulations and, at the same time, St Basil truly believed that one of the best ways to let people know about love of the Triune God is to minister to them as to God’s children.<sup>70</sup> For him this work of ministry and compassion was the way to follow Christ, to fulfil His commandments and to attain the Kingdom of Heaven. In connection with this, in Basil’s thought the Church as the community of faithful had to fulfil both functions: to save the souls of people through teaching the Trinitarian faith and to minister to their bodies through the improvement of their social conditions.

St Basil demonstrated his faithfulness to the words of the Gospel about compassion by literally following Jesus’ advice to the rich young man. Soon after his baptism he sold his possessions which he inherited from his father and distributed among the poor. Later in his life he spent the remaining portion of his family property feeding the hungry during the drought and famine in the region of Cappadocia.<sup>71</sup> When he served as an ecclesiastic leader St Basil devoted all his time and energy to the ministry of others living in

---

<sup>70</sup> As we have seen earlier in chapter four of this thesis St Basil believes that all people are children of God and He is their real Father.

<sup>71</sup> *Oration XLIII 43*. Great number of poor people died of starvation between 368 and 375 because of the climatic conditions which prevailed in this region. For background information see chapter two in Susan R. Holman, *The Hungry are Dying: Beggars and Bishops in Roman Cappadocia* (New York: Oxford University Press 2001), 64-98.

simplicity. From the conversation with the prefect Modestus we learn that as a bishop he had only “his tattered rags and the few books.”<sup>72</sup>

The highest expression of St Basil's attempts to realize what he taught in practice was the building of a great philanthropic centre, later came to be known as the *Basileias*,<sup>73</sup> which developed under his leadership into a complex of buildings for different purposes. According to St Basil's witness, there were “hospices for strangers, for those who visit us while on a journey, for those who require some care because of sickness,” with “the necessary comforts, such as nurses, physicians, beasts for travelling, and attendants.”<sup>74</sup> There was also a place where food and donated goods were distributed and a hospital for sick, especially for the victims of leprosy that were marginalized by the society.<sup>75</sup> A very eloquent description of this centre can be found in Gregory of Nazianzus' funeral oration for Basil.<sup>76</sup> In many aspects of social life such as education, health, and welfare this philanthropic organization became influential and produced great results: people were saved there in both senses physically and spiritually.<sup>77</sup> Every positive thing that was accomplished in *Basileias* served as the affirmation of the Trinitarian faith and Christian lifestyle.<sup>78</sup>

Through works of mercy St Basil exercised what was presented in his homilies and sermons as his beliefs and these philanthropic endeavours were “the consequence of his philosophy.”<sup>79</sup> His life as a Christian became a living testimony to the whole country and

---

<sup>72</sup> *Oration XLIII* 49.

<sup>73</sup> Sozomen, *HE* 6.34.9.

<sup>74</sup> *Letter XCIV*.

<sup>75</sup> *Oration XLIII* 63. See also Theodoret, *HE IV.16*. See eight facts about *Basileias* in Timothy Patitsas, “St Basil's Philanthropic Program and Modern Microlending Strategies for Economic Self-actualization” in *Wealth and Poverty in Early Church and Society*, ed. By Susan R. Holman, (Grand Rapids: Baker Academic, 2008), 269-268.

<sup>76</sup> *Oration XLIII* 63. See also *Letter XCIV*. See the ideas of how this “new city” functioned in Anrew T. Crislip, *From Monastery to Hospital: Christian Monasticism and the Transformation of Health Care in Late Antiquity*, (Ann Arbor: University of Michigan Press, 2005), 103-120.

<sup>77</sup> Even earlier, before this community was founded, Gregory testifies that during the famine St Basil “attended to the bodies and souls to those who needed it, combining personal respect with supply of their necessity, and so giving them a double relief.” See *Oration XLIII* 35.

<sup>78</sup> See more details on this issue in the next chapter.

<sup>79</sup> *Oration XLIII* 63.

beyond so that the leaders of society engaged in competition with one another in their philanthropy and magnanimity.<sup>80</sup>

St Basil not only provided an example of a proper treatment which all human beings deserve but at the same time as the bishop he showed the attitude of the Church toward the needy, the poor and the sick in the society and, in this way, he witnessed to view of God the Trinity on this issue. St Basil emphasized in his writings that the love of God should be visible in the lives of Christians. Following the biblical text from Matt. 5:16 he affirmed that the actions of mercy may serve as the confession of their faith and at the end God will be glorified due to “the light” which “shines before men.”<sup>81</sup>

St Basil admitted that he did not discover something completely new because even among “the pagan Greeks” a law of philanthropy was exercised.<sup>82</sup> He also mentioned that it is possible to find numerous examples of such love for others in both the Old and the New Testaments. Therefore, the idea of philanthropy was not foreign to his audience but building on this foundation St Basil repeatedly reminded his listeners of the Source of all goodness and of the reasons why this should become an everyday practice of the Christian community. He stressed the idea that Christian God, who is the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit, is the “true Philanthropist”<sup>83</sup> and “He is our Benefactor.”<sup>84</sup> Consequently, the believers as His followers should be “persuaded” by Christ and “give to Him in return.”<sup>85</sup> This implies that what was done by Christ must be done by the Church. In Basil’s thought, imitation of Christ through participation in the sufferings of other humans makes the

---

<sup>80</sup> *Oration XLIII* 63.

<sup>81</sup> *LR*, Clarke, 166.

<sup>82</sup> *Hom.* 8.8, Schroeder, 86. See a very good overview of Hellenistic background of philanthropy and how this idea was developed and applied by the Fathers in the Church in Demetrios J. Constantelos, “The Hellenistic Background and Nature of Patristic Philanthropy in the Early Byzantine Era” in *Wealth and Poverty in Early Church and Society*, (ed. Susan R. Holman, Grand Rapids: Baker Academic, 2008), 187-208.

<sup>83</sup> *Ps. XIV*, Schroeder, 98.

<sup>84</sup> *Hom.* 7.9, Schroeder, 58.

<sup>85</sup> *Hom.* 7.9, Schroeder, 57-58.

Church His real Body which serves here on earth and continues His ministry to this world.<sup>86</sup>

St Basil's understanding that the lives of all people and the land itself are interdependent led him to the social interactions which he thought may help restore the balance in the province that was previously broken.<sup>87</sup> He was ready to intercede in person before the imperial court in order to defend the interests of the city.<sup>88</sup> Therefore, in this way he expressed his conviction that part of his ministry and the ministry of the Church was an active involvement into the life of society. This implies the idea that Christian community has to become the agency which may transform the situation and bring positive changes in the lives of many people.

St Basil believed that as the Church leader he had to assume the responsibilities connected even with the state decisions regarding the territory because the lives of his people were influenced by the introduced innovations. In this sense, he acted as the mediator of people entrusted to him by the Triune God in order to defend their interests.<sup>89</sup> St Basil demonstrated that he really cared of his country and its conditions. St Basil was convinced that God ordained him and put him into this position that he could fulfil His plan and to support those who were in need of his assistance.<sup>90</sup> Therefore, he conveyed the idea that his duty as a Christian and as the head of his community was to become a protector and a caretaker of his people. This offered a distinctive perspective on life and actions of the Church leaders which formed the attitude of many toward their fellow

---

<sup>86</sup> Basil explains that Christians should serve using both words and deeds. *CBap 1*, Wagner, 363.

<sup>87</sup> See the examples of interactions with his fellow Cappadocians who held the influential positions in Van Dam, *Emperor, Bishops, and Friends in Late Antique Cappadocia*, 55-56. See also Karayannopoulos, *St Basil's Social Activity: Principal and Praxis*, 377-378.

<sup>88</sup> See *Letter LXXVI*.

<sup>89</sup> See *Letter LXXIV*. In the year 371 the political division of Cappadocia happened.

<sup>90</sup> See Basil's conversation with the prefect Modestus. *Oration XLIII* 63. See also *Letter XCVI* to other powerful man Sophronius the Master where St Basil affirmed that he wrote on behalf of all his people: "I am speaking here not for myself alone, but for the whole community." See also *Letter CIV* written in the same year to prefect Modestus where Basil emphasizes that he addressed him because of his great distress at the condition of his whole country.



Christians. In the time of crisis, they are supposed to act as the representatives of all believers in the region in order to defend their rights or to save their lives.

Living in the situation where climatic conditions and cultural traditions generated poverty St Basil was able to reconcile his theological views and his practical actions with existing social concerns. He used his considerable rhetorical and organizational talents in the Church to improve the living conditions of the poorest and the discriminated members of society. With the assistance of different people including state officials St Basil was able to put into action the principles which he believed were taught by the Lord and were exercised by the New Testament Church. He showed that this ideal model of philanthropic relationships which reflects an initial plan of the Triune God and his love toward humanity may work in reality and, therefore, could be followed by others.

## **Conclusion to chapter 7**

St Basil's teaching about the ministry of the Church is based on the view that the Triune God as the loving Creator and "true Philanthropist" provides everything in this world for common use so that people may have enough material things to satisfy their immediate needs. Therefore, inequality which exists in the society is the consequence of human selfishness and greed. St Basil believes that through sharing and giving it is possible to bring the world to the conditions that were intended by their Triune Creator when He distributed the wealth and property among different people. In Basil's opinion, the role which the Church and the believers play in God's plans is clearly revealed in the Scripture and the teaching of the Lord. This suggests that the merciful attitude of Christ should be imitated by everyone in the world and this will lead to positive changes in the lives of many people and to the renewal of existing circumstances. The Church under the guidance of the Holy Spirit should take the initiative in society and become the community which brings relief and redemption.

The understanding that all people are equally precious in God's eyes should determine the social actions of believers in the Church. Their faith must be demonstrated not only through spiritual disciplines and words but through their practical achievements. In this sense, the Church as a community of brothers and sisters is the best place for a Christian to exercise his or her philanthropy knowing that because of these good deeds God the Trinity will be praised and glorified.

St Basil is convinced that, as the faithful Master, God prepared the reward for all His servants who are obedient to His commandments. Both the poor and the rich in this life go through the test whether they are able or not to manage properly the common recourses which were entrusted to all and to fulfil the role appointed to them by the Triune God. The poor Christians should not envy the rich ones but be patient and trust God in their struggle against poverty and injustice. The wealthy people in the Church must remember their responsibilities and the judgment of the Lord which awaits them in the future after death. St Basil constantly emphasizes in his homilies that the doors of the heavenly *Ekklesia* will be opened only to those who are able to show love of Triune Creator toward the needy and the oppressed in this life.

Under prevailing circumstances, St Basil was able to create an alternative "new city" and to show how the Church was to operate in this world according to God's plan for humanity and to fulfil its social ministry in order to reverse all negative consequences of human disobedience to God's will. Thus, he introduced the practical way in which the Christian community may become the redeeming social force. As successful ecclesiastical administrator he left an example which for centuries determined the attitude of Christians toward the social issues. His strategies and approaches were used by many other believers and leaders of the Church both in the East and in the West.

## Chapter 8

### MONASTIC COMMUNITIES AS PRACTICAL REALIZATION OF AN IDEAL COMMUNITY

In St Basil's ecclesiology all the themes that were previously discussed come to their practical realization in the life of the monastic communities. Building communities where Christians were able to live and serve together St Basil followed the ideas which reflected his understanding of the proper life of the Church, of the Triune God and His way of dealing with this world. This kind of community of shared life and resources became for him a place where he tried to embody his ideal of the Church which should not be limited only to a monastic context but should become a model to be imitated by all. In this sense monastic community as a miniature "mirror" reflects the features of the whole Church and her connections with the Triune God in St Basil's thought.

#### ***Koinonia of love***

In the middle of the fourth century various modes of ascetic life existed in Asia Minor beginning with extreme forms of separation and rejection of social communications to the communal type of asceticism represented by the family monasteries and the double monastic communities.<sup>1</sup> The characteristic features of this movement among believers were renunciation of the traditional expectation of society, celibacy, refusal of any extra possessions except necessities of life, and withdrawal from the world in order to spend more time on meditation and prayer. The main goal of these Christians was to reach union with God using spiritual disciplines as the means of perfection. There was not any single cause of the monastic activity but it was a complex and diffused movement.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> For the background see Susanna Elm, *Virgins of God*, (New York: Clarendon Press), 1996; See also Anna M. Silvas, *The Asketikon of St Basil the Great*, 2005; and also "Introduction" in Andrew T. Crislip, *From Monastery to Hospital* (Michigan: University of Michigan Press, 2005), 1-8. See Appendixes B and C in Fedwick, *The Church*, 156-165.

<sup>2</sup> See Crislip, *From Monastery to Hospital*, 143, footnote 3. See also Clarke, *St Basil the Great: a Study in Monasticism*, 13-14.

St Basil accepted the ascetic ideas and joined the monastic community which was organized mostly by his sister Macrina after he finished his education and returned home.<sup>3</sup> Thereby, he was not so much the innovator of the communal type of monasticism as the reformer who wanted to transform different patterns of ascetic life into a system which could be perfectly integrated into the life of the Church in general. As St Gregory of Nazianzus in his *Panegyric* explains, St Basil “reconciled most excellently... the solitary and the community life.” He brought together ascetics and hermits and united them, “in order that the contemplative spirit might not be cut from society, nor the active life be uninfluenced by the contemplative, but that, like sea and land, by an interchange of their several gifts, they might unite in promoting the one object, the glory of God.”<sup>4</sup> In this sense, St Basil tried to combine the strongest sides of the many Christian groups and individuals who practiced asceticism. In order to learn more about the existing ascetic methods and life styles Basil visited many places.<sup>5</sup> The experiences of the first Christian monks in the desert both positive and negative brought him to an idea to produce the guiding rules for this unorganized movement.<sup>6</sup> The knowledge about the challenges related to monasticism that could influence the life of the Church in a negative way made St Basil discuss many things in detail.<sup>7</sup> At the same time, his rules describe not so much the life of existing communities but rather an ideal for which all Christians should strive.

---

<sup>3</sup> See *Life of Macrina*, Clarke, 28. The role of Macrina in the development of the monastic communities is so important that A. Silvas uses a title for her “The Mother of Greek Monasticism,” see Silvas, *Asketikon*, 148. See also Rousseau, *Basil of Caesarea*, 61-92. Many scholars agree on the issue that both Macrina and Basil were influenced by their family friend Eustathius of Sebaste. For the details of their complicated relationships see Rousseau, *Basil of Caesarea*, 232-269. See also an article by Charles A. Frazee, “Anatolian Asceticism in the Fourth Century: Eustathios of Sebaste and Basil of Caesarea,” *The Catholic Historical Review* 66.1 (1980): 16-33.

<sup>4</sup> *Oration XLIII* 62.

<sup>5</sup> *Letter CCIV* 6.

<sup>6</sup> In her book Silvas argues that the *Asketikon* was not written at once but this work was augmented and rearranged over years, usually by way of response to living situations and particular occasions. Silvas, *The Asketikon*, 2.

<sup>7</sup> According to Meyendorff, when St Basil speaks of community in the *Asketikon*, “he does not mean a monastery, but the Church itself.” Meyendorff, *The Byzantine Legacy in the Orthodox Church*, 201. The negative experiences and abuses on the part of mid-fourth-century ascetics were discussed and some of them were condemned by the Church at Council of Gangra. See Andrea Sterk, *Renouncing the World Yet leading the Church*, (London: Harvard University Press, 2004), 28. A selection of canons of this Council can be found in *Creeds, Councils and Controversies* (ed. J. Stevenson, and rev. W. H. C. Frend, London, 1989).

In St Basil's thinking the idea of common life (ὁ κοινωνικὸς βίος) is related to the idea of *koinonia* of the Trinity<sup>8</sup> and to the initial plan of God for humanity as the life in community.<sup>9</sup> Accordingly, this implies an agreement between all members, the life of service to others and the fulfilment of God's commandments.<sup>10</sup> Also there is an understanding that all relations and actions should be based on love which brings unity.

In the writings where St Basil introduces his thinking about the ascetic life he recognizes the dangers involved in an isolated search for personal holiness and purity. He emphasizes the idea that the mutual interactions with other believers are needed in order to obtain Christian virtues.<sup>11</sup> Especially the ones which are impossible to practice in solitude: obedience, love or servant's attitude. They imply the presence of other humans whom the person should love, serve and obey. St Basil believes that one of the advantages of life in community is the opportunity to be corrected in love by other believers because an isolated man "will not even recognize his defects readily, not having anyone to reprove him and to set him right with kindness and compassion."<sup>12</sup> This implies a very significant ecclesiological idea that a person may develop as a Christian only in relation to others when his attitude and behaviour depends on the opinions and actions of his fellow believers. Therefore, in Basil's understanding the being of the Church consists in the relationships which people have with each other.<sup>13</sup> In some sense, this again reminds us of Basil's idea that the being of the Triune God consists of Persons in relation whose concordance of will should be modelled by all Christians in community.<sup>14</sup>

---

See also Appendix 7 in Silvas, *Asketikon*, 488-494. According to Lewis Ayres, "we cannot date this council with certainty: dates proposed vary between 340 and 370." See Ayres, *Nicaea and its Legacy*, 225, footnote 9.

<sup>8</sup> See *HS XVIII.46-47* for the concept of *koinonia* inside the Trinity. See *De Fide*, Clarke, 96. See *De Jud.*, Clarke, 81.

<sup>9</sup> See the discussion in chapter 2 of this thesis.

<sup>10</sup> St Basil even calls the Christians from monastic communities "the athletes of the commandments of Christ." *LR XVII*, Clarke, 181.

<sup>11</sup> *LR*, Clarke, 157-158, 163-165.

<sup>12</sup> *LR*, Clarke, 163.

<sup>13</sup> The same idea can be found in Gunton, "The Church on Earth: the Roots of Community," 71.

<sup>14</sup> See *HS XVI. 38*; *De Jud.*, Clarke, 81.

## The eschatological goal of community – union with the Triune God

Within the monastic community St Basil tried to create the social environment which could help different people not only fulfil a set of rules imposed on them but to go through spiritual formation in order that every person in the end would be able to enter the future Heavenly Kingdom and experience a union with their Triune God. Therefore, their relationships in this new society must reflect, in some sense, the eschatological union of redeemed children of God. Consequently, even the perception of such categories as gender or social class becomes the subject of transformation. In Basil's thinking, "there is no male and female in the resurrection, but there is one certain life and it is of one kind, since those dwelling in the country of the living are pleasing to their Lord."<sup>15</sup> This idea finds its realization in the construction of community – it was a double monastery where both male and female ascetics lived together as equals and served to the common good.<sup>16</sup> Also children of both genders lived with them in the community in regulated separate houses for boys and girls.<sup>17</sup> These "common children of brotherhood" were equally expected to live the same life of godliness in similar conditions. The community also included people from different social classes who had to follow prescribed norms of monastic life and to share the same space, the same food and common tasks in this new social reality. Actually, for people from "the highest ranks of society" St Basil suggests a test where they are supposed to accomplish "some task which is distasteful to worldlings."<sup>18</sup> During such examination the person should be watched "whether with full conviction he presents himself to God as a workman" or not.<sup>19</sup> In this way, the believers were able to prove their complete devotion to the life in the Christian community according to its principle of

---

<sup>15</sup> *Ps. CXIV*. Way, 357. See also *SR CCCIX*, Clarke, 350. More on the issue of gender in St Basil see Verna Harrison, "Male and Female in Cappadocian Theology," *JTS* 41 (1990):441-471.

<sup>16</sup> This means that they were equal as humans but their physical appearance was very much distinguishable as feminine and masculine. Actually, the wearing of opposite sex clothing and behaving as opposite sex was condemned by the Council of Gangra. See Silvas, *Asketikon*, 19. According to Lewis Ayres, "we cannot date this council with certainty: dates proposed vary between 340 and 370." See Ayres, *Nicaea and its Legacy*, 225, footnote 9.

<sup>17</sup> *LR XV*, Clarke, 175.

<sup>18</sup> *LR X*, Clarke, 172.

<sup>19</sup> *LR X*, Clarke, 172.

equality. St Basil is convinced that the hard and unpleasant manual work helps the believers to acquire the true Christian character if they “aspire to humility after the likeness of our Lord Jesus Christ.”<sup>20</sup> This implies that the real status of humans in the Church does not depend on their belonging to a particular family, or on their occupations and the work which they perform, or on their possessions. The only thing which matters in this new society is their likeness to Christ. On entering the community people receive a new social identity which corresponds to their faith and their spiritual perfection but not to the previous status in the world. From now on they are supposed to acquire a new way of thinking as it were the migration to “another world” in their “habit of mind.”<sup>21</sup> With the guidance of the Holy Spirit their “fleshly relations,” the patterns of communication and the perception of things or people should be changed according to their new “citizenship” which is “in heaven.”<sup>22</sup>

Discussing the rules for monastic communities St Basil thinks this group of Christians is an example for the rest of believers in the Church. He sees the potential and the strength of life in organized community where everybody's actions are known and in some sense even controlled by the other Christians. Meyendorff is convinced that St Basil “was promoting monasticism not as a separate order, not even as a particular category of Christians, but as an ideal for ‘complete’ or ‘perfect’ Christians (*τελειοι χριστιανοι*) constituting the community of the Church.”<sup>23</sup> In Basil's opinion these monastic communities remind the primitive church in Jerusalem which he perceives as the best model for the life of the Church.<sup>24</sup> The common life and the common possessions allow

---

<sup>20</sup> LR X, Clarke, 172.

<sup>21</sup> LR V, Clarke, 159.

<sup>22</sup> LR V, Clarke, 159.

<sup>23</sup> John Meyendorff, *The Byzantine Legacy in the Orthodox Church*, 201. Anna Silvas provides the arguments for this statement. She asserts that there are some marks in Basil's discourse which show that monastic communities are considered as part of the Church: 1) in his ascetic writings there is a “sense of the ‘Church of God’ and the necessity of inclusion in it”; 2) in his language he avoids “a specialized terminology for Christian ascetics” such as monk or nun. See Silvas, *Asketikon*, 20.

<sup>24</sup> LR, Clarke, 166. The central, evocative text with which St Basil connects his ideal is Acts 2:44: “And all who believed were together and had all things in common.” See Meredith, *The Cappadocians*, 25.

the Christians not to be distracted by material things but to strive for spiritual perfection through the prayers and the actions of love toward their neighbours.<sup>25</sup> Together as the community of the faithful believers have the opportunity to develop into the “complete” or full humans personally and corporately in order to experience a union with their Triune Creator.

### **Ministry to other people as a testimony of love of God the Trinity**

The practical achievements of the community which was organized by St Basil near Caesarea, Basileias, reflect his ideas connected with the ministry of the Church in the world. This is an attempt to build a community where people are able to get an education and the proper skills for everyday life which demonstrates Basil's intention to bring changes into the lives of people.<sup>26</sup> Through service to the poor, the sick, strangers and the needy he introduces his view that the Church is supposed to influence the life around her and to transform it in a positive way according to God's plan of salvation for the whole humanity. Through sharing and giving the principle of “faith working through love”<sup>27</sup> is realized in practice by the Christians of this “new city.” The social ministry of this monastic community served as a great testimony of love of God the Trinity in time of troubles and distress.

For St Basil self-denial is not a virtue in itself but only the means which may strengthen the believer's faith and release God's love through giving extra possessions to others. In this sense, withdrawal from the society should be not so much physical which implies the break of all contacts with the outside world but spiritual.<sup>28</sup> This thinking leads

---

<sup>25</sup> See “Preface” to *The Shorter Rules*, where Basil asserts that God has brought them together so that “they have much freedom from external distractions” and may meditate on God's law day and night. Clarke, 229.

<sup>26</sup> The pressing needs of community suggest that monastics were expected to practice carpentry, masonry, agriculture or blacksmithing. See *LR XXXVIII*, Clarke, 210. We also have to mention that St Basil did not want to bring the radical changes into existed society. According to his rules slavery was allowed and usually the slaves were not accepted by the monastic communities. See *LR XI*, Clarke, 172-173.

<sup>27</sup> *The Morals LXXX.22*. Clarke,

<sup>28</sup> *Letter II.2*. This was one of the reasons St Basil founded the monastic communities in the cities and not in the desert. See also his *Letter CCXCV* (to monks): “For you know that unless illumined by faith in



to a different attitude toward other people in this world: not thoroughly negative but life-giving and transforming. In Basil's opinion, this demonstrates an attitude of Triune Creator toward humanity and His plan for people. Therefore, believers in the monastic communities are supposed to work for the benefit of the whole community and "to those in want": the elderly and the sick. As he explains, "For such a mode of life is useful to us not only because of the body-buffeting it entails, but because of love to our neighbour, in order that God by our means may bring sufficiency to the weak among the brethren, after the example given us in Acts by the apostle..."<sup>29</sup> Basil himself set a great example when during the years of drought and famine he worked with his own hands serving food to the victims of starvation: "men and women, infants, old men, every age which was in distress."<sup>30</sup> According to Gregory, Basil attended to the bodies and souls of those who needed it "imitating the ministry of Christ, Who, girded with a towel, did not disdain to wash the disciples' feet."<sup>31</sup> Thus, he confirmed that the spiritual perfection of ascetic is due not only to spiritual disciplines but to manual labour which is performed in love for the good of other people. The goal of the work is not only to satisfy one's own needs but to create an atmosphere in the community where people feel that they are responsible for each other's life. In this context their work becomes the manifestation of love toward the neighbour through ministry to people. The service to others and the distribution of goods shows their inner disposition when the believers demonstrate solidarity with other humans. Responding to the pressing needs of the society Christians, at the same time, learn the new life style. This new model of relationships of mutual love, respect, and interdependence in the Christian community reflects the plan of the Triune God for humanity and serves as a testimony of His love.

---

God, strictness of life availeth nothing; nor will a right confession of faith, if void of good works, be able to present you before the Lord. Faith and works must be joined: so shall the man of God be perfect, and his life not halt through any imperfection."

<sup>29</sup> *LR XXXVII, XLII*. Clarke, 205, 214-215.

<sup>30</sup> *Oration XLIII* 35.

<sup>31</sup> *Oration XLIII* 35.

## The life of community and obedience to the leaders appointed by God

Throughout his writings St Basil stresses the importance of obedience which facilitates unity in a particular community and in the Church in general. Unfortunately, one of the weaknesses of the earlier ascetic movements was their unwillingness to obey the Church authorities. Some of the ascetics and communities even deliberately set themselves apart from the structure of the Church. They lived according to their own standards avoiding the normal ecclesiastical assemblies of other Christians. They were not interested in “public worship or instructions from the bishop.”<sup>32</sup> Often there were only lay people in these communities. Therefore, they did not participate in the “mysteries” of the Church and especially in Eucharist which according to St Basil is a source of nutrition for their spiritual life. At the Council of Gangra bishops criticized these ascetics especially for not being “of a common mind” and for maintaining their own laws.<sup>33</sup> As Meredith noticed, “They did not owe their existence to the inspiration of bishops, and they certainly did not consider themselves as owing them any allegiance. It is no small measure of Basil’s sagacity that he saw the enormous power for good locked up in a movement that had been condemned for its antisocial behaviour.”<sup>34</sup> Such an attitude of these ascetics and the existence of these groups of believers undermined the unity of the Church and its functioning as the One Body of Christ.<sup>35</sup> The necessity to protect the ecclesiastical unity brought St Basil to the idea of introducing the norms of discipline in the monastic

---

<sup>32</sup> Fedwick, *The Church*, 156.

<sup>33</sup> See Joseph Ballan, “Basil of Caesarea on the Ascetic Craft: the Invention of Ascetic Community and the Spiritualization of Work in the *Asketikon*,” *The Heythrop Journal* XLVIII (2010):2. See also Silvas, *Asketikon*, 488-94.

<sup>34</sup> Meredith, *The Cappadocians*, 25.

<sup>35</sup> At that time there were heretical movements among ascetics known as “Messalianism” the followers of which rejected the sacramental life of the Church. They received their name from Syrian *msallyana*, meaning ‘one who prays’ (translates into Greek as *euchites*). They hoped that constant prayer would lead them to possession by the Holy Spirit. Due to their denial of the sacraments, the Messalianism was almost entirely a lay movement. See for details Meyendorff, “St. Basil, Messalianism, and Byzantine Christianity,” *St Vladimir’s Theological Quarterly* 24 (1980): 219-34.

communities which might help to develop an attitude of obedience and respect toward the authorities of the Church among ascetics.<sup>36</sup>

Opposing those who considered the power of the bishops and superiors as only of human origin St Basil asserts in his writings that the hierarchy and obedience in community corresponds to the authority of the Triune God. In his letters he explains that the ordination of bishops is done according to God's will.<sup>37</sup> In the same way St Basil in his ascetic rules defends the role of superiors in communities. Using the words of Jesus from Luke 10:16, St Basil openly declares that the authority of the superior, as the Christian leader, is derived from the Lord himself. Therefore, the one who receives a command and refuses to obey should be recognized as an evil man that actually rejects the Lord's commandment.<sup>38</sup> In his *Shorter Rules* St Basil reminds the believers that The Lord Himself for our sake was obedient to the Father unto death.<sup>39</sup> He implies that following Christ's example they must obey God and submit to the leaders which He appoints.<sup>40</sup>

It is important to recognize that the prime purpose of such power delegated to the leaders is the spiritual growth and perfection of the believers. According to Basil, the superiors should make themselves "an accurate model" by observing the standards which were handed down from the Lord Jesus Christ. "For if this is the standard of Christianity," - St Basil asserts, - "the imitation of Christ according to the measure of His Incarnation as is appropriate to the calling of each, those who are entrusted with the guidance of the many ought by their own mediation to lead on the weaker to the imitation of Christ."<sup>41</sup> It is expected from the Christian leaders that they must practice humility in the love of Christ so much that even when they are silent their "deeds may stand out more strongly than any

---

<sup>36</sup> As Fedwick noted, "Basil's full support and further elaboration of the communal type of asceticism was aimed at healing the church wounds caused by internal divisions." Fedwick, *The Church*, 5.

<sup>37</sup> *Letter CCXXVII. Letter CXC VII.*

<sup>38</sup> *SR XXXVIII*, Clarke, 243.

<sup>39</sup> *SR CXCIX*, Clarke, 303.

<sup>40</sup> As Silvas noted, "this order of priority is most important: the Lord first, and in the Lord, one's superiors. Silvas, *Asketikon*, 25. See also the description of "office-bearers" which she provides in the same paragraph.

<sup>41</sup> *LR XLIII*, Clarke, 216.

word as a means of teaching.”<sup>42</sup> For this reason each superior was chosen by the superiors from the other brotherhoods after careful inspection of his past life in order to find “sufficient proof of possessing the requisite character.”<sup>43</sup> The logic behind this is simple and clear: in order to represent Christ in their communities the leaders in the Church should copy and imitate Him. Then all the people trusted to them by God will be able to follow their example and to strive for Christlikeness in their turn watching these leaders. With the guidance of the Holy Spirit they will obey their leaders, modelling their behaviour. Therefore, the whole Church which consists of different members, both communities and people, may be brought in unity to its eschatological purpose: the union with God the Trinity in the Heavenly Kingdom.

## Conclusion to chapter 8

The efforts of St Basil to develop further and to reform an existing monastic movement are based on the ideas which reflect his understanding of the common life (ὁ κοινωνικὸς βίος) in a Christian community. As a monk and a bishop he tried to reconcile the life styles which some believers perceived as opposing to each other: ascetic and non-ascetic. Applying the idea of *koinonia* and “the law of love” which according to his beliefs reflect God’s will for humans St Basil showed in practice how the whole body of the Church may benefit from the close cooperation of her different members.

Basil’s organization of community which consists of people of both genders and different ages conveys the idea of the future eschatological union with Triune Creator when all the faithful will be able to live and praise God together. He is strongly convinced that the main goal of every believer, Christlikeness, may be realized only through participation in the life of the community. Solitary life and rejection of their fellow Christians does not facilitate spiritual perfection but on the contrary leads to a violation of

---

<sup>42</sup> LR XLIII, Clarke, 216.

<sup>43</sup> LR XLIII, Clarke, 216-217.

God's commandment to love your own neighbour. In Basil's thought monks, like any other followers of Christ, are servants and ministers but not elite. Although the lives of ascetics are considered in some sense to be an example for other believers in the Church they are supposed to serve denying their own will and obeying the leaders of the Church who were appointed by the Triune God. St Basil believes that only this ministry to others for the good of the whole community may serve as a means of perfection of the Christian character. Accordingly, everybody in a Christian community is supposed to follow the same rules including the leaders who should work even harder in order to provide a good example for their brothers and sisters in the Church. On the one hand, these leaders, like all other believers, need to go through the process of restoration and transformation that they may become "complete" Christians themselves. On the other hand, they deserve respect from the rest of believers because as chosen by the Triune God they are allowed to exercise the power entrusted to them by God in order to correct the behaviour of people in the community. Consequently, actions of all members of the Church will be confirmed by one great commandment to love God and to love a neighbour so that at the end they may live and enjoy life in the presence of the Triune God and their neighbours.

## FINAL CONCLUSIONS

Using mostly an analytical approach, this thesis presents St Basil's understanding of the Church and the interrelation of his ecclesiology and Trinitarian theology. The research shows that in Basil's thought the existence of the Church is due to the work of the Persons of the Trinity, and that the ultimate goal is the re-establishment of fellowship with the Triune God. Accordingly, in the heart of Basil's doctrine of the Church is the eschatological perspective from which he perceives the divine actions and a destiny of humanity that is Christlikeness and life eternal into the heavenly realm with the Father, Son and Holy Spirit which is a part of the divine plan from the beginning of the world.

Although in Basil's thinking the ideas of the Church and his theology of the Triune God were interwoven together we do not find in St Basil too simplistic a correspondence between the Trinitarian communion and a human community because he believed that God's Triune nature forever remains a mystery. For this reason he used necessarily limited language about God.<sup>1</sup> However, St Basil perceives the Church in a consistently Trinitarian fashion when all *hypostaseis* of God are involved in the life of this special community. In this regard, chapter 2 highlights St Basil's idea that after the first humans failed the opportunity to live in communion with God, according to His initial plan, the main goal of the work of the Trinity in salvation history became the creation of a new eschatological community and the restoration of the human depraved nature. In this sense, the divine economy includes the redevelopment of the image of God in people and their incorporation into *Ekklesia* of the Triune God. The Church in Basil's writings is portrayed as a special *koinonia* which provides the way and the means for believers to restore the original type of relationships between God and humans and among all people as His

---

<sup>1</sup> As we have seen in Introduction, St Basil preferred the term *hypostasis* in order to guard the proper meaning of words 'person' and 'communion' when used to reference to the doctrine of the Trinity.

children and that culminates in their living together in heavenly community being reconciled to their Triune God.

Following Basil's non-systematic and mystical way of thinking, this thesis shows in chapter 3 his perception of the Church as a two-dimensional reality. This enables us to unfold Basil's idea that the Church is something bigger than the collection of the congregations scattered geographically. The thesis emphasizes that in Basil's thought the heavenly part is not an inaccessible ideal but this is the part of the Church which is actively involved in the lives of all believers here and now. This worldwide fellowship of Christians includes the saints who already have overcome evil and those on earth who are still struggling against it. Therefore, in Basil's opinion, the Church is the assembly of Christlike saints who are guided by the Spirit but some of them are still in the process of transformation. All of them together strive for the final term of human history and the glorious transfiguration of the world. In some sense, the Church consists of representatives of future humanity: those who after the final consummation will live in communion with the Triune God according to the requirements of the Gospel. Interestingly enough, in Basil's opinion all of humanity from the beginning of creation until the judgement day has a chance to participate in this special fellowship in God's Kingdom. The eternal life of this community is built on love and mutual support of its members which is based on God's philanthropy.

Through the exploration of different metaphors that St Basil uses in his writings chapter 4 analyses the relationships of the Church with her Triune Creator. One of the significant characteristics of the Church is the presence of the Triune God with her or among His people. The Church is the house or the courtyard of the Lord as long as He rules the community and the believers as the true worshipers follow Him in obedience. Presenting the Church as the Daughter of the King, the Mother of believers, the Bride of Christ and His Body, St Basil conveys the idea that there is only One Church which is

indivisible however extended it might be geographically. All faithful believers are gathered by God the Trinity to comprise one single body or family where people acquire their new identity.

Chapter 5 of this thesis explores Basil's ideas about the inward life of this mystical Body. The areas of consideration are liturgical services where Trinitarian confession is recited, baptism as the universally accepted rite of admission to the Church, Eucharist as the most important mystery for maintaining the life of Christians, and the penitential discipline that is exercised in order to restore the sinners to life eternal. The research shows how important for St Basil is the idea that there is no salvation apart from the Church where the "sound and unperturbed" doctrine is taught and the valid mysteries are provided with the invocation of Triune names. He believes that the proper teaching about God the Trinity during liturgical services provides the knowledge that helps to secure the eternal life of the Christians.

Chapter 6 investigates Basil's perception of the Church's unity in times of troubles and disagreements through the discussion of the criterion for this unity which in his thinking is based on the Trinitarian confession and the mutual love of the Christians, and especially bishops as head leaders of communities. The thesis proceeds with the analysis of the role of the Christian leaders and the councils that were supposed to maintain ecclesiastical unity. Although St Basil supports the idea of hierarchy and highly esteems the role of the bishops and ministers he expects them to be the examples of Christlike ministry for their people. As appointed by the Triune God they are supposed to become the eyes and the heads of the local congregations but they should have the attitude of servants who with all their strength care for people whom God put under their supervision. The bishops and ministers also have to teach their people the proper beliefs and preserve the faith which was delivered to them from the time of the apostles and the fathers. In order to be faithful to the right doctrine they should submit to all decisions of the ecumenical councils as the



highest human authority that may keep the right balance between diversity and unity within the Church.

The social life of the Church and the proper attitude of the Christians toward their fellow believers and the rest of society are examined in the next chapter of the thesis. Beginning with the theological ideas such as Trinitarian philanthropy and human worthiness in the eyes of the Triune God the thesis reveals St Basil's thoughts about the role of the Church as an agent of justice, mercy and love. He strongly believes that through the acts of Christians and the Church God the Trinity deals with this world in order to save, to transform and to bring into heavenly Kingdom as many people as possible, both rich and poor.

The last chapter of the thesis is concerned with monastic communities in general and the life of "new city" Basileias in particular. It helps to draw the thesis to its conclusion by showing to what extent St Basil motivated by his beliefs was able to apply his ideas about the Church in practice and how his ideal of the Church was realised in order to change and transform the world. The life of the community reflects the ideas which were previously discussed about the involvement of the Triune God in the life of the Church: fulfilment of God's commandments, *koinonia* in love, the eschatological union, ministry to others, and the leadership under guidance of God. In some sense this was an attempt to build the community which gives the people a foretaste of what is coming. The research shows that St Basil was faithful to his teaching and used all his strength and power to make the reality of what he believed in a particular socio-historical context.

### ***Thesis contribution***

This thesis has several contributions to wider studies of St Basil's theology. Although books have been written about his life as a whole, studies have discussed his asceticism,

and researches have been devoted to his Trinitarian theology there is a significant lack of the secondary source material on St Basil's view of the Church (especially in English).<sup>2</sup>

The thesis unfolds St Basil's ideas of the Church which previously were not discussed from a Trinitarian perspective. For this reason the thesis refers mostly to primary texts of St Basil, his friends and fourth-fifth century historians who discuss the events related to Basil's life and the Church. Throughout the chapters the thesis demonstrates: 1) what ideas of the Church can be found in the works of St Basil, 2) how these ideas shape his ecclesiology and in what sense there is a Trinitarian approach.

The thesis also brings to light St Basil's perception of the Church as two-dimensional mystical reality which did not receive much attention from other scholars. This idea underlines his apophatic approach toward God and His Church which exists in two worlds at the same time – on earth and in heaven – and cannot be understood completely yet. However, this understanding that the Church is a unique entity with a bond between the believers in both parts emphasizes the importance of unity and cooperation and that the lives of Christians are interdependent. In Basil's thought even the saints, who finished their race, intercede for their brothers and sisters that are still going through a process of education and transformation in the earthly part of this community. At the same time it shows the communication between the Church and the Triune God who is actively involved in her life and who is always present with His Church in all her dimensions including the future heavenly realm.

Another area that the thesis takes into consideration and that plays an important role in St Basil's doctrine of the Church is the eschatological perspective from which St Basil perceives the actions both of God and of humans. In this sense the thesis shows that St Basil has a holistic vision of the Church that starts from the creation of the first human

---

<sup>2</sup> It must be emphasised that the research which was done on Basil's ideas of the Church by Fedwick is outstanding but even in this work the author uses a completely different approach. It is mostly Pneumatological and not the Trinitarian perspective.

community, includes God's plan for humanity after Fall, and finishes after the consummation of all things with the life of the Heavenly *Ekklesia* in the world to come which was actually expected at the creation.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY:

## Primary sources

*Editions and Translations of Basil's Works*

For each text reference to the editions and translations is provided. Translations which provide substantial commentary are also listed among the secondary sources.

Basil of Caesarea. *Ad adulescentes*. (PG 31:563-590). *Saint Basile, Aux jeunes gens sur la manière de tirer profit des lettrés helléniques*, ed. and tr. Fernand Boulenger, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. Paris: Les Belles Lettres, 2002. *Saint Basil on the Value of Greek Literature*, ed. N. G. Wilson. London: Duckworth, 1975. English translation in *Saint Basil, The Letters*, vol. 4, tr. Roy J. Deferrari, Loeb Classical Library. London: Heinemann, 1934, 379-435. Russian translation: *Св. Василий Великий. К юношам о том, как получать пользу из языческих сочинений*. No pages. Cited 12 May 2010. Online: [http://www.odinblago.ru/sv\\_otci/vasiliy\\_velikiy/besedy/22/](http://www.odinblago.ru/sv_otci/vasiliy_velikiy/besedy/22/).

Basil of Caesarea. *Ascetica. Long Rules=Regulae fusius tractatae* (PG 31:889-1052). *Short Rules=Regulae brevius tractatae* (PG 31:1080-1305B). Latin translation by Rufinus: *Basili regula a Rufino latine versa*, ed. Klaus Zelzer, Corpus scriptorium ecclesiasticorum Latinorum 86. Viena: Hoelder-Pichter-Tempsky, 1986. English translations: *The Ascetic Works of Saint Basil*, tr., with intro. and notes, William Kemp Lowther Clarke. Translations of Christian Literature series I. Greek Texts, London: SPCN, 1925. *Saint Basil, Ascetical Works*, tr. M. Monica Wagner. Fathers of the Church 9. New York: The Catholic University of America Press, 1950. *The Asketikon of St Basil the Great*, tr. Anna M. Silvas. Oxford Early Christian Studies, Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2005. Russian translation: *Святитель Василий Великий. Творения. Том 2. Аскетические творения. Письма. В Полном собрании творений святых отцов церкви и церковных писателей*. Сибирская Благовонница: Москва, 2008.

Basil of Caesarea. *Contra Eunomium*. (PG 29:497-670). *Basile de Césarée, Contre Eunome, suivi de Eunome, Apologie*, 2 vols., tr., with intro. and notes, Bernard Sesboüé, with Georges-Mathieu de Durand and Louis Doutreleau, Sources chrétiennes 299, 305. Paris: Cerf, 1982-83. English translation: *Against Eunomius* (books 1-3), tr. Mark DelCogliano and Andrew Radde-Gallwitz. Fathers of the Church 122. Washington, DC: Catholic University of America Press, 2011. Russian translation: *Святитель Василий Великий. Творения. Том 1. Догматико-полемические творения. Экзегетические сочинения. Беседы. В Полном собрании творений святых отцов церкви и церковных писателей*. Сибирская Благовонница: Москва, 2008.

Basil of Caesarea. *De baptismo libri duo* (PG 31:1514-1529). *Il Battesimo*, tr. and ed. Umberto Neri. Testi e ricerche di scene religiose 12; Brescia: Paideia Editrice, 1976. English translation: *Concerning Baptism* (2 books) in *Saint Basil, Ascetical Works*, tr. M. Monica Wagner. Fathers of the Church 9. New York: The Catholic University of America Press, 1950, 339-430. Russian translation: *Святитель Василий Великий. О крещении*. Перевод и примечания П. К. Доброцветова. Сибирская Благовонница: Москва, 2012.

- Basil of Caesarea. *De fide* (PG 31:676-692). English translations: *On the Faith in Saint Basil, Ascetical Works*, tr. M. Monica Wagner. Fathers of the Church 9. New York: The Catholic University of America Press, 1950, 57-69. See also in *The Ascetic Works of Saint Basil*, tr., with intro. and notes, William Kemp Lowther Clarke. Translations of Christian Literature series I. Greek Texts, London: SPCN, 1925, 77-89.
- Basil of Caesarea. *De iudicio Dei* (PG 31: 653-678). English translations: *On the Judgment of God in Saint Basil, Ascetical Works*, tr. M. Monica Wagner. Fathers of the Church 9. New York: The Catholic University of America Press, 1950, 37-56. See also in *The Ascetic Works of Saint Basil*, tr., with intro. and notes, William Kemp Lowther Clarke. Translations of Christian Literature series I. Greek Texts, London: SPCN, 1925, 77-89.
- Basil of Caesarea. *De spiritu sancto* (PG 32:67-218). *Basile de Césarée, Sur le Saint-Esprit*, ed. and tr., with intro. and notes, Benoit Pruche, sources chrétiennes 17 bis, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. Paris: Editions du Cerf, 1968. English translations: *Saint Basil the Great. On the Holy Spirit*, trans. by George Lewis. London: Religious Tract Society, 1888. *The Treatise De Spiritu Sancto in Nicene and Post-Nicene Fathers*, vol. VIII. Series 2. Edited by Philip Schaff and trans. by Blomfield Jackson. 1895, repr. Grand Rapids: Wm. B. Eerdmans, 1968. *St. Basil the Great on the Holy Spirit*, trans. Blomfield Jackson, David Anderson. Crestwood, NY: St Vladimir's Seminary Press, 1980. *On the Holy Spirit*, trans. Stephen M. Hildebrand. Yonkers, NY: St Vladimir's Seminary Press, 2011. Russian translation: *Святитель Василий Великий. Творения. Том 1. Догматико-полемические творения. Экзегетические сочинения. Беседы. В Полном собрании творений святых отцов церкви и церковных писателей.* Сибирская Благовонница: Москва, 2008.
- Basil of Caesarea. *Epistulae* (PG 32:219-1112). *Saint Basile, Lettres*, 3 vols., ed. And tr. Yves Courtonne, Collection Guillaume Budé. Paris: Les Belles Lettres, 1957, 1961, 1966. English translation: *Letters in Nicene and Post-Nicene Fathers*, vol. VIII. Series 2. Edited by Philip Schaff, 1895. *Saint Basil, The Letters*, 4 vols., trans. Roy J. Deferrari, Loeb Classical Library. London: Heinemann, 1926, 1928, 1930, 1934. *Saint Basil, Letters*, 2 vols., tr. Sister Agnes Clare Way, Fathers of the Church 13, 28. New York: The Fathers of the Church, Inc., 1951, 1955. Russian translations: *Святитель Василий Великий. Творения. Том 2. Аскетические творения. Письма. В Полном собрании творений святых отцов церкви и церковных писателей.* Сибирская Благовонница: Москва, 2008. See also ebook: *Святитель Василий Великий. Избранные творения. 2 тома.* Веб-издательство «Святогор», 2010. No pages. Cited 1 March 2011. Online: [http://utesheniya.ru/p\\_3113.html](http://utesheniya.ru/p_3113.html).

Basil of Caesarea. *Hexaemeron Homiliae* 1-9 (PG 29:4-208). *Basile de Césarée, Homélie sur l'Hexaéméron*, ed. and tr., with intro., Stanislas Giet, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed., revised and expanded, Sources chrétiennes 26 bis. Paris: Cerf, 1968. English translations: *Hexaemeron in Nicene and Post-Nicene Fathers*, vol. VIII. Series 2. Edited by Philip Schaff and trans. by Blomfield Jackson. 1895, repr. Grand Rapids: Wm. B. Eerdmans, 1968. *Homilies on the Hexaemeron 1-9 in Saint Basil: Exegetic Homilies*, tr. Sister Agnes Clare Way, Fathers of the Church 46. Washington, DC: Catholic University of America Press, 1963, 3-150. Russian translation: «Беседы на Шестеднев» в *Святитель Василий Великий. Творения. Том 1. Догматико-полемические творения. Экзегетические сочинения. Беседы*. В Полном собрании творений святых отцов церкви и церковных писателей. Сибирская Благовонница: Москва, 2008.

Basil of Caesarea. *Homiliae variae* (PG 31: 163-481, 489-617, 1437-1476, 1488-1496). English translations: Homilies 3, 10, 11, 20, 21 in *Saint Basil, Ascetical Works*, tr. M. Monica Wagner. Fathers of the Church 9. New York: The Catholic University of America Press, 1950. Homilies 3, 9, 10 in *On the Human Condition: St Basil the Great*, tr. Nonna Verna Harrison. Popular Patristics series 30. Crestwood: St Vladimir's Seminary Press, 2005. Homilies 6, 7, 8 in *St Basil the Great: On Social Justice*, tr. C. Paul Schroeder. Popular Patristics series 38. Crestwood: St Vladimir's Seminary Press, 2009. Homilies 11, 12, 15, 16, 20, 21, 24, 26, 29 in *St Basil the Great: On Christian Doctrine and Practice*, tr. Mark DelCogliano. Crestwood: St Vladimir's Seminary Press, 2012. Homily 8 in *The Hungry are Dying: Beggars and Bishops in Roman Cappadocia*, tr. Susan R. Holman. New York : Oxford University Press, 2001, 183-192. Homilies 18, 19 in *Let Us Die that We May Live: Homilies on Christian Martyrs from Asia Minor, Palestine and Syria (c. AD 350-AD 450)*, tr. Pauline Allen. London and New York: Routledge, 2003. Homily 13, *Exhortation to Holy Baptism* in *Baptism: Ancient Liturgies and Patristic Texts*, tr. T. P. Halton, ed. A. Hamman. Staten Island: Alba House, 1967, 75-87. Russian translations: «Беседы» в *Святитель Василий Великий. Творения. Том 1. Догматико-полемические творения. Экзегетические сочинения. Беседы*. В Полном собрании творений святых отцов церкви и церковных писателей. Сибирская Благовонница: Москва, 2008. See also *Святитель Василий Великий. Беседы*. No pages. Cited 6 March 2009. Online: <http://lib.eparhia-saratov.ru/books/03v/vasily/talks/contents.html>.

Basil of Caesarea. *Homiliae in psalmos* (PG 29:307-494; 30:104-116). English translations: On Psalms 1, 7, 14.2, 28, 29, 32, 33, 44, 45, 48, 59, 61, 114 in *Saint Basil: Exegetic Homilies*, tr. Sister Agnes Clare Way, Fathers of the Church 46. Washington, DC: Catholic University of America Press, 1963, 151-360. On Psalms 14.1, 115 in *St Basil the Great: On Christian Doctrine and Practice*, tr. Mark DelCogliano. Crestwood: St Vladimir's Seminary Press, 2012. On Psalm 14.1 in *St Basil the Great: On Social Justice*, tr. C. Paul Schroeder. Popular Patristics series 38. Crestwood: St Vladimir's Seminary Press, 2009, 89-99. Russian translation: *Святитель Василий Великий. Беседы на псалмы*. No pages. Cited 3 February 2009. Online: <http://www.pravlib.ru/pisanie21.htm>.

Basil of Caesarea. *Liturgiae S. Basilii* (PG 31:1630-1677). 1<sup>st</sup> critical edition by M. I. Orlov, Литургия Святого Василия Великого. С. Петербург: Синодальная Типография, 1909. (*Liturgiia Svyatogo Vasiliya Velikogo*, St Petersburg: Sinodalnaya Tipographiya). English translation: *The Orthodox Liturgy being The Divine Liturgy of S. John Chrysostom and S. Basil the Great*, London: SPCK, 1939. Russian translation: Божественная литургия по чину Иоанна Златоустого и Василия Великого. No pages. Cited 23 July 2011. Online: <http://www.liturgy.ru/lit1>.

Basil of Caesarea. *Regulae morales* (PG 31:700-869). English translations: *The Morals in The Ascetic Works of Saint Basil*, tr., with intro. and notes, William Kemp Lowther Clarke. Translations of Christian Literature series I. Greek Texts, London: SPCN, 1925. *Saint Basil, Ascetical Works*, tr. M. Monica Wagner. Fathers of the Church 9. New York: The Catholic University of America Press, 1950, 71-206. Russian translation: «Нравственные правила» в Святитель Василий Великий. Творения. Том 1. Догматико-полемические творения. Экзегетические сочинения. Беседы. В Полном собрании творений святых отцов церкви и церковных писателей. Сибирская Благовонница: Москва, 2008.

### ***Other primary sources***

*An Ancient Christian Sermon commonly known as Second Clement*. Greek text and English translation in *The Apostolic Fathers: Greek Texts and English Translations*, tr. J. B. Lightfoot and J. R. Harmer, 2nd ed. Edited by Michael Holmes, Grand Rapids: Baker Books, 2004.

Cyprian. *On the Unity of the Church*, tr. Ernest Wallis in *Fathers of the Third Century: Hippolytus, Cyprian, Caius, Novatian, etc., Ante-Nicene Fathers*, Series 1, vol. V. Edited by A. Roberts and J. Donaldson, origin. pub. 1885, repr. Grand Rapids: Eerdmans Publishing Company, 1971. See also *The Unity of the Catholic Church*, tr. and ed. S. L. Greenslade in *Early Latin Theology*. The Library of Christian Classics 5. Philadelphia: The Westminster Press, 1956.

Cyprian. *On the Lord's Prayer*, tr. Ernest Wallis in *Fathers of the Third Century: Hippolytus, Cyprian, Caius, Novatian, etc., Ante-Nicene Fathers*, vol. V, ed. A. Roberts and J. Donaldson, origin. pub. 1885, repr. Grand Rapids: Eerdmans Publishing Company, 1971.

Eusebius of Caesarea. *Ecclesiastical History*. Greek text and English translation in *Eusebius, Ecclesiastical History*, tr. Kirsopp Lake and J. E. L. Oulton, with ed. H.J. Lawlor. Loeb Classical Library, 2 vols., 7<sup>th</sup> ed., Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1980.

Gregory Nazianzen. *Epigram 161. On Emmelia, the Mother of St. Basil* (Antologia Graeca 8:39). English translation in Silvas, Anna. *Macrina the Younger, Philosopher of God*. Brepols:Turnhout, Belgium, 2008. Russian translation: Эпиграмма 54, «Эмилиии, матери св. Василия Великого» в Святитель Григорий Богослов. Творения. Том 2. В Полном собрании творений святых отцов церкви и церковных писателей. Сибирская Благовонница: Москва, 2007.

- Gregory Nazianzen. *Epistulae* (PG 37). *Saint Grégoire de Nazianze, Lettres*, 2 vols., ed. and tr. Paul Gallay, Collection Guillaume Budé. Paris: Les Belles Lettres, 1964, 1967. See also Gregor von Nazianz, *Briefe*, ed. Paul Gallay, *Die griechischen christlichen Schriftsteller der ersten Jahrhunderte* 53, Berlin: Akademie-Verlag, 1969. English translation: *Letters*, tr. Brian E. Daley, S.J. in *Gregory of Nazianzus, The Early Church Fathers*, London and New York: Routledge, 2006. See also *Letters*, tr. Charles Gordon Browne and James Edward Swallow in *S. Cyril of Jerusalem, S. Gregory Nazianzen, Nicene and Post-Nicene Fathers*, Series 2. Edited by Philip Schaff and Henry Wace. Vol. VII. Grand Rapids: Wm. B. Eerdmans, 1893. Russian translation: Святитель Григорий Нисский, *Творения*. No pages. Cited 10 June 2010. Online: [http://www.odinblago.ru/nisskiy\\_t8](http://www.odinblago.ru/nisskiy_t8).
- Gregory Nazianzen. *Oratio XLIII* (PG 36:493-605). *Grégoire de Nazianze: Discours* 42-43, ed. and tr. Jean Bernardi. Sources chrétiennes 384. Paris: Cerf, 1992. English translations: *Funeral Orations by Gregory Nazianzen and St Ambrose*, tr. Leo P. McCauley in *Fathers of the Church* 22. New York: Fathers of the Church, 1953. *The Panegyric on S. Basil*, tr. Charles Gordon Browne and James Edward Swallow, in *S. Cyril of Jerusalem, S. Gregory Nazianzen, Nicene and Post-Nicene Fathers*, Series 2, Edited by Philip Schaff and Henry Wace. Vol. VII. Grand Rapids: Wm. B. Eerdmans, 1893. Russian translation: Святитель Григорий Богослов. *Слово 43: Надгробное Василию, архиепископу Кесарии Каппадокийской*. No pages. Cited 2 July 2011. [http://www.orthlib.ru/Gregory\\_Nazianzen/basil.html](http://www.orthlib.ru/Gregory_Nazianzen/basil.html).
- Gregory of Nyssa. *De Vita Sanctae Macrinae* (PG XLVI: 960A-1000B). *Grégoire de Nysse, Vie de sainte Macrine*, ed. and tr., with intro., notes., and index, Pierre Maraval. Sources chrétiennes 178. Paris: Cerf, 1971. *Gregorii Nysseni opera*, ed. Werner Jaeger with others, 8:1. Leiden: Brill, 1963. English translations: *Life of Macrina in Saint Gregory: Ascetical Works*, tr. V. W. Callahan, *The Fathers of the Church* 58. Washington, DC: The Catholic University of America Press, 1967. See also *Life of Macrina*, tr. W. K. L. Clarke. Early Church Classics. London: SPCK, 1916. Russian translation: Святитель Григорий Нисский, *Послание о жизни преподобной Макрины*. No pages. Cited 10 June 2011. Online: [http://hesychia.in.ua/grig\\_niss\\_06.htm](http://hesychia.in.ua/grig_niss_06.htm).
- Gregory of Nyssa. *Epistulae*, ed. G. Pasquali in *Gregorii Nysseni opera*, ed. Werner Jaeger with others, 8:1. Leiden: Brill, 1963. English translation: *Letters*, tr. William Moor and Henry A. Wilson in *Nicene and Post-Nicene Fathers*, Series 2, Edited by Philip Schaff and Henry Wace. Vol. V. Org. prin. 1892, repr. Grand Rapids: Wm. B. Eerdmans, 1972.
- Gregory of Nyssa. *In laudem fratris Basilii* (PG 46:788-817). English translation: *Encomium of Saint Gregory Bishop of Nyssa on His Brother Saint Basil Archbishop of Caesarea*, ed. and tr. with intro. And notes, Sister James Aloysius Stein, A. M., Catholic University of America Patristic Studies 17. Washington, D.C.: Catholic University of America Press, 1928. Russian translation: Святитель Григорий Нисский, *Слово на день памяти Василия Великого, родного брата*. No pages. Cited 10 January 2010. Online: [http://www.odinblago.ru/nisskiy\\_t8/14](http://www.odinblago.ru/nisskiy_t8/14).



- Ignatius of Antioch. *To the Ephesians*. Greek text and English translation in *The Apostolic Fathers: Greek Texts and English Translations*, tr. J. B. Lightfoot and J. R. Harmer, 2nd ed. Edited by Michael Holmes. See also *To the Ephesians* in *Early Christian Fathers*. The Library of Christian Classics 1. Edited by Cyril C. Richardson. New York: Collier Books, 1970.
- Ignatius of Antioch. *To the Magnesians*. Greek text and English translation in *The Apostolic Fathers: Greek Texts and English Translations*, tr. J. B. Lightfoot and J. R. Harmer, 2nd ed. Edited by Michael Holmes. See also *To the Magnesians* in *Early Christian Fathers*. The Library of Christian Classics 1. Edited by Cyril C. Richardson. New York: Collier Books, 1970.
- Ignatius of Antioch, *To the Philadelphians*. Greek text and English translation in *The Apostolic Fathers: Greek Texts and English Translations*, tr. J. B. Lightfoot and J. R. Harmer, 2nd ed. Edited by Michael Holmes. See also *To the Philadelphians* in *Early Christian Fathers*. The Library of Christian Classics 1. Edited by Cyril C. Richardson. New York: Collier Books, 1970.
- Irenaeus. *Against Heresies*, (PG 7:437-1224). *Irénéé de Lyon: Contres les heresies*, Livres 3, 4, 5, ed. and tr., and annot. A. Rousseau, L. Deutereau, B Hemmerdinger, and C Mercier; 6 vols., Sources chrétiennes 210, 211, 100.1, 100.2, 152, 153. Paris: Cerf, 1974, 1965, 1969. English translation: *Against Heresies* in *Ante-Nicene Fathers*. Series 1, vol. 1. Edited by A. Roberts and J. Donaldson, orig. prin. 1885, repr. Grand Rapids: Eerdmans Publishing Company, 1981.
- Socrates. *Historia ecclesiastica* (PG 67:9-842). English translation: *Socrates, The Ecclesiastical History*, tr., with notes, Valesius. London: Bohn, 1853. See also *The Ecclesiastical History of Socrates Scholasticus*, tr. A. C. Zenos in *Socrates, Sozomenus: Ecclesiastical Histories, Nicene and Post-Nicene Fathers*, Series 2. Vol. 2. Edited by Philip Schaff and Henry Wace, orig. pub. 1890, repr. Peabody, Mass.: Hendrickson Publishers, Inc., 1995.
- Sozomen. *Historia ecclesiastica*. In *Sozomenus, Kirchengeschichte*, ed. Joseph Bidez, Die griechischen christlichen Schriftsteller der ersten Jahrhunderte 50. Berlin: Akademie-Verlag, 1960. English translation: *Ecclesiastical History*, tr Chester D. Hartranft in *Socrates, Sozomenus: Ecclesiastical Histories, Nicene and Post-Nicene Fathers*, Series 2, vol. 2. Edited by Philip Schaff and Henry Wace, orig. pub. 1890, repr. Peabody, Mass.: Hendrickson Publishers, Inc., 1995.
- Tertullian, *On the Modesty*, tr. S. Thelwall in *Fathers of the Third Century: Tertullian, Minucius Felix, Commodian, Origen, Ante-Nicene Fathers*, Series 1, vol. IV. Edited by A. Roberts and J. Donaldson, origin. pub. 1885, repr. Grand Rapids: Eerdmans Publishing Company, 1972.
- The Letter of the Romans to Corinthians commonly known as First Clement*. Greek text and English translation in *The Apostolic Fathers: Greek Texts and English Translations*, tr. J. B. Lightfoot and J. R. Harmer, 2nd ed. Edited by Michael Holmes. See also in *Early Christian Fathers*. The Library of Christian Classics 1. Edited by Cyril C. Richardson. New York: Collier Books, 1970. Also available via *Christian Classics Ethereal Library*. No pages. Cited 10 March 2010. Online: <http://www.ccel.org/ccel/richardson/fathers.vi.i.html>.

Theodoret, *Historia Ecclesiastica*. *Theodoret, Kirchengeschichte*, ed. Léon Parmentier, with 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. by Flix Scheidweiler, Die griechischen christlichen Schriftsteller der ersten Jahrhunderte 44, Berlin: Akademie-Verlag, 1954. English translation: *The Ecclesiastical History of Theodoret*, tr. Blomfield Jackson in *Theodoret, Jerome, Gennadius, Rufinus: Historical Writings, etc., Nicene and Post-Nicene Fathers*, Series 2, vol. 3. Edited by Philip Schaff and Henry Wace, orig. pub. 1893, repr. Peabody, Mass.: Hendrickson Publishers, Inc., 1994.

### Secondary sources

Afonsky, Gregory. *Christ and the Church*. Crestwood: St. Vladimir's Seminary Press, 2001.

Aghiorgoussis, Maximos. "Application of the theme 'eikon theou' (image of God) according to Saint Basil the Great." *Greek Orthodox Theological Review* 21.3 (1976): 265-288.

Aghiorgoussis, Maximos. "Image as 'Sign' (*semeion*) of God: Knowledge of God through the Image According to Saint Basil." *The Greek Orthodox Theological Review* 21 (1976): 19-54.

Allen, Diogenes and Springsted, Eric O. *Philosophy for Understanding Theology*. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. London: Westminster John Knox Press, 2007.

Awad, Najeeb G. "Between Subordination and *Kiononia*: Toward a New Reading of the Cappadocian Theology." *Modern Theology* 23.2 (2007): 181-204.

Ayres, Lewis. *Nicaea and its Legacy. An Approach to Fourth Century Trinitarian Theology*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2004.

Baghos, Mario. "St Basil's Eschatological vision: Aspects of the Recapitulation of History and the 'Eighth Day'." *Phronema* 25 (2010): 85-103.

Ballan, Joseph. "Basil of Caesarea on the Ascetic Craft: the Invention of Ascetic Community and the Spiritualization of work in the *Asketikon*." *The Heythrop Journal* XLVIII (2010): 1-10.

Batiffol, P. "L'ecclésiologie de s. Basile." *Échos d'Orient* 21 (1922): 9-30.

Bebis, George S. "Introduction to the Liturgical Theology of St Basil the Great." *The Greek Orthodox Theological Review* 42 (1997): 273-285.

Beeley, Christopher A. "The Holy Spirit in the Cappadocians: Past and Present." *Modern Theology* 26:1 (2010): 90-119.

Behr, John. *The Nicene Faith: One of the Holy Trinity*. Crestwood: St. Vladimir's Seminary Press, 2004.

Bettenson, Henry. *The Later Christian Fathers*. 8<sup>th</sup> ed., Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1987.

- Bobrinskoy, Boris. *The Mystery of the Trinity*. Crestwood: St Vladimir's Seminary Press, 1999.
- Болотов В.В. «Заметки по поводу текста литургии св. Василия Великого». *Христианское чтение* 3 (1914): 281-298.
- Bonis, Constantine G. "Problem concerning faith and knowledge, or reason and revelation, as expounded in Letters of St Basil the Great to Amphilochius of Iconium." *Greek Orthodox Theological Review* 5 (1959): 27-44.
- Борисовский, Н. «Св. Василий Великий как пастырь церкви». *Вера и Разум* (1901): 23-41, 82-106.
- Bright, William. *The Canons of the First Four General Councils of Nicaea, Constantinople, Ephesus, and Chalcedon*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1892.
- Campenhause, Hans von. *The Fathers of the Church*. Peabody, Massachusetts: Hendrickson Publishers, 1998.
- Chadwick, Henry. *East and West: The making of a Rift in the Church. From Apostolic time until the Council of Florence*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2003.
- Clarke, William Kemp Lowther. *St Basil the Great: a Study in Monasticism*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1913.
- Clarke, William Kemp Lowther. *The Ascetic Works of Saint Basil*. Translations of Christian Literature series I., London: SPCN, 1925.
- Collins, Paul M. *Trinitarian Theology West and East: Karl Barth, the Cappadocian Fathers, and John Zizioulas*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2001.
- Constantelos, Demetrios J. "The Hellenistic Background and Nature of Patristic Philanthropy in the Early Byzantine Era." Pages 187-208 in *Wealth and Poverty in Early Church and Society*. Edited by Susan R. Holman, Grand Rapids: Baker Academic, 2008.
- Constantelos, Demetrios J. "Basil the Great's Social Thought and Involvement." *The Greek Orthodox Theological Review* 26 (1981): 81-86.
- Costache, Doru. "Christian Worldview: Understanding From St Basil the Great." *Phronema* XXV (2010): 21-56.
- Crislip, Andrew T. *From Monastery to Hospital: Christian Monasticism and the Transformation of Health Care in Late Antiquity*. Michigan: University of Michigan Press, 2005.
- Daley, S.J., Brian E. "Building a New City: The Cappadocian Fathers and the Rhetoric of Philanthropy." *Journal of Early Christian Studies* 7:3 (1999): 431-461.
- De Mendieta, Emmanuel Amand. *The "Unwritten" and "Secret" Apostolic Traditions in the Theological Thought of St. Basil of Caesarea*. London: Oliver and Boyd, 1965.

- De Mendieta, Emmanuel Amand. "The Pair KHPYTMA and ΔΟΓΜΑ in the Theological Thought of St. Basil of Caesarea." *Journal of Theological Studies*, new series 16 (1965): 129-42.
- Deferrari, Roy Joseph. "The Classic and the Greek Writers of the Early Church: Saint Basil." *The Classical Journal* 13:8 (1918): 579-591.
- DelCogliano, Mark. "Basil of Caesarea on Proverbs 8:22 and the Sources of Pro-Nicene Theology." *Journal of Theological Studies* 59 (2008): 183-190.
- DelCogliano, Mark. "Basil of Caesarea, Didymus the Blind, and the Anti-Pneumatomachian Exegesis of Amos 4:13 and John 1:3." *Journal of Theological Studies*, new series 61 (2010): 644-58.
- DelCogliano, Mark. *Basil of Caesarea's Anti-Eunomian Theory of Names: Christian Theology and Late-Antique Philosophy in the Fourth Century Trinitarian Controversy*. Leiden: Brill, 2010.
- DelCogliano, Mark. "The Influence of Athanasius and the Homoiousians on Basil of Caesarea's Decentralization of "Unbegotten."” *Journal of Early Christian Studies* 19:2 (2011): 197–223.
- DelCogliano, Mark. "Tradition and Polemic in Basil of Caesarea's Homily on the Theophany." *Vigiliae Christianae* 66 (2012): 30-55.
- DelCogliano, Mark. *On Christian Doctrine and Practice*. Popular Patristics Series 47. Crestwood: St Vladimir's Seminary Press, 2012.
- Dinan, Andrew. "Manual Labour in the Life and Thought of St Basil the Great." *Logos* 12 (2009): 134-157.
- Ditmars, Ron. "Gregory the Theologian's Panegyric on Saint Basil: A Literary Analysis of Chapters 65-67." *The Greek Orthodox Theological Review* 39 (1994): 199-210.
- Drecoll, Volker Henning. *Die Entwicklung der Trinitätslehre des Basilius von Cäsarea: Sain Weg vom Homöusianer zum Neonizäner*. Göttingen: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht, 1996.
- Dunzl, Franz. *A Brief History of the Doctrine of the Trinity in the Early Church*. Translated by John Bowden. New York: T&T Clark, 2007.
- Elm, Susanna. *Virgins of God: the Making of Asceticism in Late Antiquity*. New York: Clarendon Press, 1996.
- Ericson John H. "Reception of Non-Orthodox into the Orthodox Church." *Diakonia* 9 (1984-85): 68-86.
- Farrar, Frederic W. *Lives of the Fathers*. London: Adam and Charles Black, 1907.
- Fedwick, Paul Jonathan. *The Church and the Charisma of Leadership in Basil of Caesarea*. Toronto: Pontifical Institute of Medieval Studies, 1979.

- Fedwick, Paul Jonathan, ed. *Basil of Caesarea: Christian, Humanist, Ascetic. A Sixteen-Hundredth Anniversary Symposium*. 2 vols. Toronto: Pontifical Institute of Mediaeval Studies, 1981.
- Fisher, J. D. C. "Baptism: 1. Patristic." Pages 55-56 in *A New Dictionary of Liturgy and Worship*. 5<sup>th</sup> ed. Edited by J. G. Davis. London: Butler & Tanner, 1996.
- Флоровский, Георгий. *Восточные Отцы IV века*. Минск, Белоруссия: Жатва, 2006.
- Florovsky, George. "St Basil and 'Unwritten tradition.'" Pages 85-89 in *The Collected Works of Georges Florovsky, Volume One; Bible, Church, Tradition: An Eastern Orthodox View*. Belmont: Nordland Publishing Company, 1972.
- Florovsky, George. "The Patristic Age and Eschatology: Introduction." Pages 63-78 in *The Collected Works of Georges Florovsky, Volume Four: Aspects of Church History*. Belmont: Nordland Publishing Company, 1975.
- Forell, George Wolfgang. *History of Christian Ethics: From the New Testament to Augustine*. Minneapolis: Augsburg Publishing House, 1979.
- Fortin, Ernest L. "Hellenism and Early Christian Thought in Basil the Great's Address Ad Adolescentes." Pages 189-203 in *Neoplatonism and Early Christian Thought*. London: Variorum Publications, 1981.
- Fortman, Edmund J. *The Triune God: A Historical Study of the Doctrine of Trinity*. 2 ed., Grand Rapids: Backer Book House, 1982.
- Fouyas, Methodios G. *St. Basil the Great and the Roman See*. Oxford: Fourth International Congress on Patristic Studies, 1963.
- Frazee, Charles A. "Anatolian Asceticism in the Fourth Century: Eustathios of Sebastea and Basil of Caesarea." *The Catholic Historical Review* 66.1 (1980): 16-33.
- Garnett, Sherman. "The Christian Young and the secular world: St Basil's Letter on Pagan Literature." *Greek Orthodox Theological Review* 26.3 (1981): 211-223.
- Geanakoplos, Deno John. "St Basil, 'Christian Humanist' of the 'Three Hierarchs' and Patron Saint of Greek Letters" *Greek Orthodox Theological Review* 25 (1980), 94-102.
- Георгиевский, В. «Василий Великий как пастырь и учитель церкви». *Странник* (1896) 1: 3-21, 2: 185-208.
- Giles, Kevin. *What on Earth is the Church?* London: SPCK, 1995.
- Grenz, Stanley J. *Theology for the Community of God*. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed., Grand Rapids: Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing Co, 2000.
- Griffith, Howard. "The Churchly Theology of Basil's *De Spiritu Sancto*." *Presbyterion* 25 (1999): 91-108.

- Gribomont, J. "Basil of Caesarea in Cappadocia" Pages 114-115 in *Encyclopedia of the Early Church*, vol. 1. Edited by A. D. Berardina. Translated by Adrian Walford. 2 vols, Cambridge: James Clarke & Co, 1992.
- Gross, Jules. *The Divinization of the Christian According to the Greek Fathers*. Anaheim, California: A&C Press, 2002.
- Guitton, Jean. *Great Heresies & Church Councils*. London: Harvill Press, 1965.
- Gunton, Colin E. *The Promise of Trinitarian Theology*. Edinburgh: T&T Clark, 1991.
- Gunton, Colin E. "The Church on Earth: the Roots of Community." Pages 48-80 in *On Being the Church: Essays on the Christian Community*. Edited by Colin E Gunton and Daniel W. Hardy, Edinburgh: T&T Clark, 1989.
- Haight, Roger. *Christian Community in History: Ecclesial Existence*. 3 vols. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed., Bloomsbury: London, 2014.
- Hallburton, R.J. "The Patristic Theology of the Eucharist." Pages 245-251 in *The Study of Liturgy*. Edited by Cheslyn Johns, Geoffrey Wainwright, Edwards Yarnold Sj, and Paul Bradshaw, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed., London: SPCK, 1992.
- Hamell, Patrick J. *Introduction to Patrology*. Cork: The Mercier Press, 1968.
- Hamman, Adalbert. *How to Read the Church Fathers*. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. London: SCM Press, 1993.
- Hamman, Andre. *Baptism: Ancient Liturgies and Patristic Texts*. Translated by Thomas P. Halton. Staten Island: Alba House, 1967.
- Hanson, Richard P. C. "Basil's Doctrine of Tradition in Relation to the Holy Spirit." *Vigiliae Christianae*, 22 (1968): 241-255.
- Hanson, Richard P. C. *The Search for the Christian Doctrine of God: The Arian Controversy, 318-381 A.D.* London: T&T Clark, 1988.
- Harrison, Nonna Verna. *On the Human Condition: St Basil the Great*. Popular Patristics series 30. Crestwood: St Vladimir's Seminary Press, 2005.
- Haykin, Michael A. G. "'In the cloud and in the sea': Basil of Caesarea and the exegesis of 1Cor 10:2." *Vigiliae Christianae* 40 (1986): 135-144.
- Haykin, Michael A. G. "And Who is the Spirit? Basil of Caesarea's Letters to the Church at Tarsus." *Vigiliae Christianae* 41 (1987): 377-385.
- Hildebrand, Stephen M. *The Trinitarian Theology of Basil of Caesarea: A Synthesis of Greek Thought and Biblical Truth*. Washington, D.C.: The Catholic University Press, 2007.
- Hildebrand, Stephen M. "A Reconsideration of the Development of Basil's Trinitarian Theology: the Dating of Ep.9 and Contra Eunomium." *Vigiliae Christianae* 58 (2004): 393-406.

- Hildebrand, Stephen M. *St Basil the Great: On the Holy Spirit*. Popular Patristics series 42. Yonkers: St Vladimir's Seminary Press, 2011.
- Holder, Arthur G. "Saint Basil the Great on Secular Education and Christian Virtue." *Religious Education* 87 (1992): 395-415.
- Holman, Susan R. "The Hungry Body: Famine, Poverty, and Identity in Basil's Hom.8." *Journal of Early Christian Studies* 7.3 (1999): 337-363.
- Holman, Susan R. *The Hungry are Dying: Beggars and Bishops in Roman Cappadocia*. New York : Oxford University Press, 2001.
- Holman, Susan R. "Rich City Burning: Social Welfare and Ecclesial Insecurity in Basil's Mission to Armenia." *Journal of Early Christian Studies* 12.2 (2004): 195-215.
- Hunt, Anne. "The Trinity and the Church: Explorations in Ecclesiology from a Trinitarian Perspective." *Irish Theological Quarterly* 70 (2005): 215-235.
- Hutcheon, Cyprian Robert. "A Sacrifice of Praise": A Theological Analysis of the Pre-Sanctus of the Byzantine Anaphora of St Basil." *St Vladimir's Theological Quarterly* 45 (2001): 3-23.
- Ihssen, Brenda Lewellyn. "Basil's and Gregory's Sermon on Usury: Credit Where Credit is Due." *Journal of Early Christian Studies* 16 (2008): 403-430.
- Jacobs, Nathan. "On 'Not Three Gods' – again: can a Primary – Secondary Substance Reading of *ousia* and *hypostasis* avoid Tritheism?" *Modern Theology* 24:3 (2008):331-358.
- Jackson, Blomfield. "Prolegomena. Sketch of the Life and Works of Saint Basil." Pages xiii-lxxvii in *NPNF*<sup>2</sup>, 1968.
- Jeremias, Joachim. *Infant Baptism in the First Four Centuries*. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed., London: SCM Press, 1964.
- Jevtich, Atanasij. "Between the 'Niceaens' and the 'Easterners': 'Catholic' confession of Saint Basil," *St Vladimir's Theological Quarterly* 24 (1980): 235-252.
- Jewett, Paul King. *Infant Baptism & the Covenant of Grace*. Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1978.
- Jungmann, Josef A., S.J. *The Early Liturgy: to the Time of Gregory the Great*. London: Darton, Longman & Todd, 1959.
- Karavites, Peter. "Saint Basil and Hymnology," *The Greek Orthodox Theological Review*, 37 (1992) 203-214.
- Karayannopoulos, Ioannes. "St Basil's Social Activity: Principles and Praxis." Pages 375-391 in *Basil of Caesarea: Christian, Humanist, Ascetic*. Edited by Paul J. Fedwick. Toronto: Pontifical Institute of Mediaeval studies, 1981.

- Kariatlis, Philip. "St Basil's Contribution to the Trinitarian Doctrine: a Synthesis of Greek *Paideia* and the Scriptural Worldview." *Phronema* 25 (2010) 57-83.
- Kärkkäinen, Veli-Matti. *An Introduction to Ecclesiology*. Downers Grove: InterVarsity Press, 2002.
- Kärkkäinen, Veli-Matti. "Ecclesiology." Pages 251-262 in *Global Dictionary of Theology*. Edited by William A. Dyrness and Veli-Matti Kärkkäinen. Inter-Varsity Press: Nottingham, 2008.
- Kelly, J. N. D. *Early Christian Doctrines*. 5<sup>th</sup> ed., London: Continuum, 2006.
- Khodr, Georges (Metropolitan). "Basil the Great: Bishop and Pastor." *St Vladimir's Theological Quarterly* 29 (1985): 5-27.
- Хрептак, В. *Отношение Св. Василия Великого к Церкви*. Ленинград, Россия: Библиотека Духовной Академии, 1967.
- Kopecek, Thomas A. "The Social Class of the Cappadocian Fathers". *Church History* 42 (1973): 453-301.
- Kopecek, Thomas A. "The Cappadocian Fathers and Civic Patriotism." *Church History* 43.03 (1974): 293-303.
- Kopecek, Thomas A. *A History of New-Arianism*. 2 vols. Patristic Monograph Series 8. Cambridge, Mass.: Philadelphia Patristic foundation, 1979.
- Koschorke, Klaus. *Spuren der Alten Liebe: Studien zum Kirchenbegriff des Basilios von Caesarea*. Freiburg, Schweiz: Universitätsverlag Freiburg Schweiz, 1991.
- Кривошеин, Василий (Krivoshein). «Экклезиология Святого Василия Великого». No pages. Cited 23 November 2008. Online: <http://mystudies.narod.ru/library/k/krivoshein/basil.html>.
- Lampe, Geoffrey William Hugo, ed. *A Patristic Greek Lexicon*. Oxford: AT the Clarendon Press, 4<sup>th</sup> ed, 1976.
- L'Huillier, Peter. *The Church of the Ancient Councils: the Disciplinary Work of First Four Ecumenical Councils*. Crestwood: St. Vladimir's Seminary Press, 1996.
- Lienhard, Joseph T. "Basil of Caesarea, Marcellus of Ancyra, and "Sabellius"" *Church History* 58:2 (1989): 157-167.
- Lienhard, Joseph T. "Ousia and Hypostasis: The Cappadocian Settlement and the Theology of 'One Hypostasis.'" Pages 99-121 in *The Trinity*. Edited by Stephen T. Davis, Daniel Kendall Sj, and Gerald O'Collina Sj. Oxford:Oxfors University Press, 1999.
- Lietzmann, Hans. *The Era of the Church Fathers. A History of the Early Church*, vol. IV, 5<sup>th</sup> ed., London: Lutherworthpress, 1960.



- Lim, Richard. "The Politics of Interpretation in Basil of Caesarea's Hexaemeron." *Vigilinae Christianae* 44 (1990): 351-370.
- Limberis, Vasiliki. "The eyes infected by evil : Basil of Caesarea's homily, On envy." *Harvard Theological Review*. 84 (1991): 163-184.
- Lloyd-Moffett, Stephen R. The "anchorite within": Basil of Caesarea's Erotapokrisis 7 and the Ascetic Challenge to Christian Identity." *Religion & Theology* 17 (2010): 268-288.
- Lossky, Vladimir. *The Mystical Theology of the Eastern Church*. London: James Clarke & Co. LTD, 1957.
- Lossky, Vladimir. *Orthodox Theology: Introduction*. Crestwood: St. Vladimir's Seminary Press, 1989.
- Lossky, Nicolas. "The Orthodox Church." Pages 1-17 in *The Christian Church: Introduction to the Major Traditions*. Edited by Paul Avis, SPCK: London, 2002.
- Louth, Andrew. "The Cappadocians." Pages 289-301 in *Cambridge History of Early Christian Literature*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2004.
- Ludlow, Morwenna. "Demons, Evil, and Liminality in Cappadocian Theology." *Journal of Early Christian Studies*, 20:2 (2012): 179-211.
- Mayer, Annemarie C. "Ecclesial Communion: The Letters of St Basil the Great Revisited." *International Journal for the Study of the Christian Church* 5 (2005): 226-241.
- Matz, Brian J., Caroline Macé, and Susan R. Holman. "De Beneficentia: A Homily On Social Action Attributed To Basil Of Caesarea." *Vigiliae Christianae* 66.5 (2012): 457-481.
- Matz, Brian. "The Principle of Detachment from Private Property in Basil of Caesarea's Homily 6 and its Context." Pages 173-198. Cited 20 March 2013. Online: [https://lirias.kuleuven.be/bitstream/123456789/254799/2/Article\\_PrivProp\\_BasilHom6.pdf](https://lirias.kuleuven.be/bitstream/123456789/254799/2/Article_PrivProp_BasilHom6.pdf).
- McGrath, Alister E. *Christian Theology*. 5<sup>th</sup> ed., Wiley-Blackwell: West Sussex, 2011.
- McGuckin, John A. *The SCM Press A-Z of Patristic Theology*. 2 ed., Suffolk: SCM Press, 2005.
- Meredith, Anthony. "Asceticism – Christian and Greek." *Journal of Theological Studies* 27 (1976): 313-332.
- Meredith, Anthony. *The Cappadocians*. London: Geoffrey Chapman and Crestwood, 1995.
- Meyendorff, John. "St Basil, Messalianism, and Byzantine Christianity." *St Vladimir's Theological Quarterly* 24 (1980): 219-34.

- Meyendorff, John. *The Byzantine Legacy in the Orthodox Church*. Crestwood: St Vladimir's Seminary Press, 2000.
- Moltmann, Jürgen. *The Church in the Power of the Spirit*. 3<sup>rd</sup> ed., Bungay, Suffolk: SCM Press, 1981.
- Monge, Rico Gabriel. "Submission to One Head: Basil of Caesarea on Order and Authority in the Church." *St Vladimir's Theological Quarterly* 54 2 (2010): 219-243.
- Morison, E. F. *St. Basil and His Rule: A Study in Early Monasticism*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1912.
- Noble, Thomas A. *Holy Trinity: Holy People. The Theology of Christian Perfecting*. Didsbury Lecture Series; Cascade Books: Eugene, Oregon, 2013.
- Noble, Thomas A. "The Deity of the Holy Spirit According to Gregory of Nazianzus." PhD. University of Edinburgh, 1989.
- Olson, Roger E. *The Story of Christian Theology*. Leicester: Apollos, 1999.
- Orphanos, M.A. *Creation and Salvation according to St Basil of Caesarea*. Athens, 1975.
- Quasten, Johannes. *Patrology*. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed., Utrecht: Spectrum Publishers, 1975.
- Paget, James Carleton. "The Vision of the Church in the Apostolic Fathers." Pages 193-206 in *A Vision For the Church*. Edinburgh: T&T Clark, 1997.
- Patitsas, Timothy. "St Basil's Philanthropic Program and Modern Microlending Strategies for Economic Self-actualization." Pages 267-286 in *Wealth and Poverty in Early Church and Society*, ed. By Susan R. Holman, Grand Rapids: Baker Academic, 2008.
- Pelican, Jaroslav. *The Emergence of The Catholic Tradition (100-600)*. Vol. 1. Chicago: The University of Chicago Press, 1971.
- Phan, Peter. *Social Thought: Message of the Fathers of the Church*. Wilmington: Michael Glazier, 1984.
- Pomazansky, Michael. *Orthodox Dogmatic Theology*. Saint Herman of Alaska Brotherhood, 1997.
- Prestige, George Leonard. *St. Basil the Great and Apollinaris of Laodicea*. London: SPCK, 1956.
- Prestige, George Leonard. *God in Patristic Thought*. 3<sup>rd</sup> ed. London: SPCK, 1969.
- Radde-Gallwitz, Andrew. *Basil of Caesarea: A Guide to His Life and Doctrine*. Eugene, Oregon: Cascade Books, 2012.
- Radde-Gallwitz, Andrew. *Basil of Caesarea, Gregory of Nyssa, and the Transformation of Divine Simplicity*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2009.

- Rainey, David. "The Argument for Deity of the Holy Spirit, according to St Basil the Great, Bishop of Caesarea." M. Th. Thesis. Vancouver School of Theology, 1991.
- Robertson, David G. "Stoic And Aristotelian Notions Of Substance In Basil Of Caesarea." *Vigiliae Christianae* 52.4 (1998): 393-417.
- Rousseau, Philip. *Basil of Caesarea*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1994.
- Rousseau, Philip. "Human Nature and its Material Setting in Basil of Caesarea's Sermons on the Creation." *Heythrop Journal* 49 (2008): 222-239.
- Rousseau, Philip. "The Pious Household and the Virgin Chorus: Reflections on Gregory of Nyssa's Life of Macrina." *Journal of Early Christian Studies* 13.2 (2005): 165-166.
- Routley, Erik. *The Wisdom of the Fathers*. London: SCM Press, 1957.
- Rudberg, Stig Y. "Manuscripts and Editions of the Works of Basil of Caesarea." Pages 49-65 in *Basil of Caesarea: Christian, Humanist, Ascetic*. Edited by Paul J. Fedwick. Toronto: Pontifical Institute of Mediaeval Studies, 1981.
- Rusch, William G. "Basil the Great views of the unity of the Church." *Mid-Stream* 35 (1996): 283-289.
- Sandwell, Isabella. "How to Teach Genesis 1.1-19: John Chrysostom and Basil of Caesarea on the Creation of the World." *Journal of Early Christian Studies* 19 (2011): 539-564.
- Schroeder, C. Paul. *On Social Justice: St Basil the Great*. Popular Patristics series 38. Crestwood: St Vladimir's Seminary Press, 2009.
- Schlager, Bernard. "Saints Basil and John Chrysostom on the Education of Christian Children." *Greek Orthodox Theological Review* 36.1 (1991): 37-55.
- Siepierski, Paulo. "Poverty and Spirituality: Saint Basil and Liberation Theology." *Greek Orthodox Theological Review* 33(1988): 313-325.
- Silvas, Anna M. *The Asketikon of St Basil the Great*. *Oxford Early Christian Studies*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2005.
- Silvas, Anna. *Macrina the Younger, Philosopher of God*. Brepols: Turnhout, Belgium, 2008.
- Silvas, Anna M. "Interpreting the Motives of Basil's social Doctrine." *Journal of the Australian Early Medieval Association* 5 (2009): 165-175.
- Smith, Richard Traver. *St Basil the Great*. London: Wyman and Sons, 1879.
- Staniloae, Dumitru. *Theology and the Church*. Crestwood: St Vladimir's Seminary Press, 1980.

- Stead, Christopher. *Philosophy in Christian Antiquity*. 3<sup>rd</sup> ed., Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1996.
- Sterk, Andrea. *Renouncing the World Yet Leading the Church: The Monk-Bishop in Late Antiquity*. Cambridge, Massachusetts: Harvard University Press, 2004.
- Stevenson, J. *Creeds, Councils and Controversies: Documents Illustrating the History of the Church, AD 337-461*. SPCK Church History. 9th ed. Cambridge: University Press, 1995.
- Stramara Jr., Daniel F. "Double Monasticism in the Greek East, Fourth through Eighth Centuries." *Journal of Early Christian Studies* 6 (1998): 269–312.
- Sunberg, Carla Dawn. *The Cappadocian Mothers: Deification Exemplified in the Writings of Basil, Gregory and Gregory*. PhD thesis. Manchester: Manchester University. 2012.
- Святитель Василий Великий. *Творения. Том 1. Догматико-полемические творения. Экзегетические сочинения. Беседы*. В Полном собрании творений святых отцов церкви и церковных писателей. Сибирская Благовонница: Москва, 2008.
- Святитель Василий Великий. *Творения. Том 2. Аскетические творения. Письма*. В Полном собрании творений святых отцов церкви и церковных писателей. Сибирская Благовонница: Москва, 2008.
- Святитель Василий Великий. *Избранные творения*. 2 тома. Веб-издательство «Святогор», 2010. No pages. Cited 1 March 2011. Online: [http://utesheniya.ru/p\\_3113.html](http://utesheniya.ru/p_3113.html).
- Святитель Григорий Богослов. *Творения. Том 1. Слова*. В Полном собрании творений святых отцов церкви и церковных писателей. Сибирская Благовонница: Москва, 2010.
- Святитель Григорий Богослов. *Творения. Том 2. Стихотворения. Письма. Завещание*. В Полном собрании творений святых отцов церкви и церковных писателей. Сибирская Благовонница: Москва, 2010.
- Святитель Григорий Богослов. *Творения*. No pages. Cited 5 May 2011. Online: [http://www.orthlib.ru/Gregory\\_Nazianzen/](http://www.orthlib.ru/Gregory_Nazianzen/).
- Timiadis, Emilianos. "The Trinitarian Structure of the Church and Its Authority." Pages 121-158 in *Theological Dialogue Between Orthodox & Reformed Churches*. Edited by T. F. Torrance. Edinburgh: Scottish Academic Press, 1985.
- Torchia, N. Joseph. "Sympatheia in Basil of Caesarea's Hexameron: A Plotinian Hypothesis." *Journal of Early Christian Studies*, 4:3 (1996): 359-378.
- Torrance, Thomas F. *Theology in Reconstruction*. London: SCM Press LTD, 1965.
- Torrance, Thomas F. *The Trinitarian Faith*. 3<sup>rd</sup> ed., Edinburgh: T&T Clark, 1997.

- Turcescu, Lucian. "Prosōpon and Hypostasis in Basil of Caesarea's "Against Eunomius" and the Epistles." *Vigiliae Christianae* 51. 4 (1997): 374-395.
- Turner, C. H. "Introduction to 'La Tradition Manuscrite de la Correspondance de Saint Basile.'" *The Journal of Theological Studies* (1919): 1-9.
- Van Dam, Raymond. *Kingdom of Snow: Roman Rule and Greek Culture in Cappadocia*. Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press, 2002.
- Van Dam, Raymond. *Becoming Christian: The Conversion of Roman Cappadocia*. Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press, 2003.
- Van Dam, Raymond. *Families and Friends in Late Roman Cappadocia*. Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press, 2003.
- Van Dam, Raymond. "Emperor, Bishop and Friends in Late Antique Cappadocia." *Journal of Theological Studies* 37 (1986): 53-76.
- Vischer, Lukas. *Basilius der Große: Untersuchungen zu einem Kirchenvater des vierten Jahrhunderts*. Basel: Buchdruckerei Friedrich Reinhardt AG, 1953
- Volf, Miroslav. *After His Likeness: the Church as the Image of the Trinity*. Grand Rapids, Mich: Eerdmans, 1998.
- Waddell, James Alan. "Identifying Authorities and Pastoral Practice in the Early Church. Two case studies: Basil of Caesarea and Ephrem of Syria." *Concordia Journal* 1 (2005):48-59.
- Wall, William. *The History of Infant Baptism*. London: Griffith, Farran, Browne & Co, 1889.
- Wagner, M. Monica. *Saint Basil, Ascetical Works*. Fathers of the Church 9. New York: The Catholic University of America Press, 1950.
- Ware, Timothy. *The Orthodox Church*. 3<sup>rd</sup> ed. London: Clays Ltd, 1991.
- Way, Agnes Clare. *Saint Basil: Exegetical Homilies*. Fathers of the Church 46. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. New York: The Catholic University of America Press, 1981.
- Way, Agnes Clare. *Saint Basil: Letters*. Vol. 1, Fathers of the Church 13. New York: The Fathers of the Church, Inc., 1951.
- Way, Agnes Clare. *Saint Basil: Letters*. Vol. 2, Fathers of the Church 28. New York: The Fathers of the Church, Inc., 1955.
- Wilken, Robert L. "The Spirit of Holiness: Basil of Caesarea and early Christian Spirituality." *Worship* 42 (1968): 77-87.
- Wilken, Robert Louis. *The First Thousand Years: A Global History of Christianity*. London: Yale University Press, 2012.

- Winn, Robert E. "Revisiting the date of authorship of Basil of Caesarea's *Ad adolescents*." *Greek Orthodox Theological Review* 44 (1999): 291-307.
- Wright, David F. *What Has Infant Baptism done to Baptism?* Milton Keynes: Paternoster, 2005.
- Zizioulas, John D. *Being as Communion: Studies in Personhood and the Church*. Crestwood, N.Y.: St. Vladimir's Seminary Press, 1985.
- Zizioulas, John D. "On Being a Person: Towards an Ontology of Personhood." Pages 33-46 in *Persons Divine and Human*. 2ed., Edited by Christoph Schwobel and Colin E. Gunton, Edinburgh: T&T Clark, 1999.
- Zizioulas, John D. *Eucharist, Bishop, Church: The Unity of the Church in the Divine Eucharist and the Bishop During the First Three Centuries*. Holy Cross Orthodox Press: Brookline, Massachusetts, 2001.
- Zizioulas, John D. *Lectures in Christian Dogmatics*. London: T&T Clark, 2008.
- Yamamura, Kei. "Development of the doctrine of the Holy Spirit in Patristic Philosophy: St Basil and St Gregory of Nyssa." *St Vladimir's Theological Quarterly* 18 (1974): 3-21.
- Young, Frances. "The 'Penultimate' Nature of the Church – the Eschaton Is Not Yet!" Pages 199-211 in *Orthodox and Wesleyan Ecclesiology*. Edited by S. T. Kimbrough, Jr. Crestwood, N.Y.: St. Vladimir's Seminary Press, 2007.
- Young, Frances. "Cappadocians." Pages 135-172 in *From Nicaea to Chalcedon: a Guide to the Literature and its Background*. Edited by F. M. Young and Andrew Teal, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. London: SCM Press, 2010.